Owner's Manual
for Vehicle

The Ultimate
Driving Machine

Contents
A - Z

CarManuals2.com

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 602 735 - © 08/09 BMW AG

CarManuals2.com

M6 Owner's Manual for Vehicle

Congratulations, and thank you for choosing a BMW M6.

Thorough familiarity with your vehicle will provide you with enhanced control and security when you drive it. We therefore have this request:

Please take the time to read this Owner's Manual and familiarize yourself with the information that we have compiled for you before starting off in your new vehicle. It contains important data and instructions intended to assist you in gaining maximum use and satisfaction from your BMW M6's unique range of technical features. The manual also contains information on maintenance designed to enhance operating safety and contribute to maintaining the value of your BMW M6 throughout an extended service life.

This manual is supplemented by a Service and Warranty Information Booklet for US models or a Warranty and Service Guide Booklet for Canadian models.
We wish you an enjoyable driving experience.

BMW AG

CarManuals2.com

BMW recommends Castrol

CarManuals2.com

© 2009 Bayerische Motoren Werke
Aktiengesellschaft
Munich, Germany
Reprinting, including excerpts, only with the
written consent of BMW AG, Munich.
US English VIII/09, 09 09 500
Printed on environmentally friendly paper,
bleached without chlorine, suitable for recycling.

Contents

The fastest way to find specific topics is to use the index, refer to page 230.

CarManuals2.com

Using this Owner's Manual
4 Notes
7 Reporting safety defects

At a glance
10 Cockpit
16 iDrive
21 Letters and numbers
22 Voice activation system

Controls
26 Opening and closing
43 Adjusting
52 Transporting children safely
55 Driving
65 Controls Overview
75 Technology for comfort, convenience and safety
89 Lamps
94 Climate
100 Practical interior accessories

Driving tips
108 Things to remember when driving
112 BMW M6 Engineering

Navigation
116 Navigation system
117 Destination entry
126 Destination guidance
132 What to do if...

Entertainment
136 On/off and tone
139 Radio
142 Satellite radio
144 CD/DVD player and CD changer
151 Music collection
156 External devices

Communications
162 Telephone
174 Contacts
176 BMW Assist

Mobility
184 Refueling
186 Wheels and tires
192 Under the hood
197 Maintenance
199 Care
203 Replacing components
212 Giving and receiving assistance

Reference
220 Technical data
224 Short commands of voice activation system
230 Everything from A to Z

Notes

Using this Owner's Manual

We have made every effort to ensure that you are able to find what you need in this Owner's Manual as quickly as possible. The fastest way to find specific topics is to refer to the detailed index at the back of the manual. If you wish to gain an initial overview of your vehicle, you will find this in the first chapter.

Should you sell your BMW some day, please remember to hand over the Owner's Manual as well; it is an important component of your vehicle.

Additional sources of information

Should you have any other questions, your BMW center will be happy to advise you.

You can find information on BMW, e.g. on technology, on the Internet at www.bmwusa.com.

Symbols used

CarManuals2.com

Indicates precautions that must be followed precisely in order to avoid the possibility of personal injury and serious damage to the vehicle.◀

Indicates information that will assist you in gaining the optimum benefit from your vehicle and enable you to care more effectively for your vehicle.◀

Refers to measures that can be taken to help protect the environment.◀

◀ Marks the end of a specific item of information.

* Indicates special equipment, country-specific equipment and optional accessories, as well as equipment and functions not yet available at the time of printing.

"..." Identifies Control Display texts used to select individual functions.

These sections contain information on using the voice activation system.

›...‹ Verbal instructions to use with the voice activation system.

››...‹‹ Identifies the answers generated by the voice activation system.

Symbols on vehicle components

Indicates that you should consult the relevant section of this Owner's Manual for information on a particular part or assembly.

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 602 735 - © 08/09 BMW AG

The individual vehicle

When purchasing your BMW, you have decided in favor of a model with individualized equipment and features. This Owner's Manual describes all equipment offered for the BMW M6.

Please bear in mind that the manual may contain information on accessories and equipment that you have not specified for your own vehicle. Sections describing options and special equipment are marked by asterisks * to assist you in identifying possible differences between the descriptions in this manual and your own vehicle's equipment.

If equipment in your BMW is not described in this Owner's Manual, please refer to the accompanying Supplementary Owner's Manuals.

Editorial notice

BMW pursues a policy of continuous, ongoing development that is conceived to ensure that our vehicles continue to embody the highest quality and safety standards combined with advanced, state-of-the-art technology. For this reason, it is possible that the features described in this Owner's Manual could differ from those on your vehicle.

For your own safety

Maintenance and repairs

Advanced technology, e.g. the use of modern materials and high-performance electronics, requires specially adapted maintenance and repair methods. Therefore, have corresponding work on your BMW performed only by your BMW center or a workshop that works according to BMW repair procedures with correspondingly trained personnel. If this work is not carried out properly, there is a danger of subsequent damage and related safety hazards.◀

CarManuals2.com

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 602 735 - © 08/09 BMW AG

Parts and accessories

For your own safety, use genuine parts and accessories approved by BMW.
When you purchase accessories tested and approved by BMW and Genuine BMW Parts, you simultaneously acquire the assurance that they have been thoroughly tested by BMW to ensure optimum performance when installed on your vehicle.
BMW warrants these parts to be free from defects in material and workmanship.
BMW will not accept any liability for damage resulting from installation of parts and accessories not approved by BMW.
BMW cannot test every product made by other manufacturers to verify if it can be used on a BMW safely and without risk to either the vehicle, its operation or its occupants.
Genuine BMW Parts, BMW Accessories and other products approved by BMW, together with professional advice on using these items, are available from all BMW centers.
Installation and operation of non BMW approved accessories such as alarms, radios, amplifiers, radar detectors, wheels, suspension components, brake dust shields, telephones, including operation of any mobile phone from within the vehicle without using an externally mounted antenna, or transceiver equipment such as CBs, walkie-talkies, ham radios or the like may cause extensive damage to the vehicle, compromise its safety, interfere with the vehicle's electrical system, or affect the validity of the BMW Limited Warranty. See your BMW center for additional information.◀

Maintenance, replacement, or repair of the emission control devices and systems may be performed by any automotive repair establishment or individual using any certified automotive part.◀

California Proposition 65 Warning

California law requires us to issue the following warning:

Engine exhaust and a wide variety of automobile components and parts, including components found in the interior furnishings in a vehicle, contain or emit chemicals known to the State of California to cause cancer and birth defects and reproductive harm. In addition, certain fluids contained in vehicles and certain products of component wear contain or emit chemicals known to the State of California to cause cancer and birth defects or other reproductive harm.
Battery posts, terminals and related accessories contain lead and lead compounds. Wash your hands after handling.
Used engine oil contains chemicals that have caused cancer in laboratory animals. Always protect your skin by washing thoroughly with soap and water.◀

CarManuals2.com

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 602 735 - © 08/09 BMW AG

Service and warranty

We recommend that you read this publication thoroughly.

Your BMW is covered by the following warranties:

- ▷ New Vehicle Limited Warranty
- ▷ Rust Perforation Limited Warranty
- ▷ Federal Emissions System Defect Warranty
- ▷ Federal Emissions Performance Warranty
- ▷ California Emission Control System Limited Warranty

Detailed information about these warranties is listed in the Service and Warranty Information Booklet for US models or in the Warranty and Service Guide Booklet for Canadian models.

Your vehicle has been specifically adapted and designed to meet the particular operating conditions and homologation requirements in your country and continental region in order to deliver the full driving pleasure while the vehicle is operated under those conditions. If you wish to operate your vehicle in another country or region, you may be required to adapt your vehicle to meet different prevailing operating conditions and homologation requirements. You should also be aware of any applicable warranty limitations or exclusions for such country or region. In such case, please contact Customer Relations for further information.

Reporting safety defects

For US customers

The following applies only to vehicles owned and operated in the US.

If you believe that your vehicle has a defect which could cause a crash or could cause injury or death, you should immediately inform the National Highway Traffic Safety Administration (NHTSA) in addition to notifying BMW of North America, LLC, P.O. Box 1227, Westwood, New Jersey 07675-1227, Telephone (800) 831-1117.

If NHTSA receives similar complaints, it may open an investigation, and if it finds that a safety defect exists in a group of vehicles, it may order a recall and remedy campaign. However, NHTSA cannot become involved in individual problems between you, your center, or BMW of North America, LLC.

To contact NHTSA, you may call the Vehicle Safety Hotline toll-free at 1-888-327-4236 (TTY: 1-800-424-9153); go to http://www.safercar.gov; or write to: Administrator, NHTSA, 400 Seventh Street, SW., Washington, DC 20590. You can also obtain other information about motor vehicle safety from http://www.safercar.gov

For Canadian customers

Canadian customers who wish to report a safety-related defect to Transport Canada, Defect Investigations and Recalls, may call 1-800-333-0510 toll-free from anywhere in Canada or 1-613-993-9851 from the Ottawa region and from other countries, or contact Transport Canada by mail at: Transport Canada, ASFAD, Place de Ville, Tower C, 330 Sparks Street, Ottawa, ON, K1A 0N5. You can also obtain other information about motor vehicle safety from http://www.tc.gc.ca

CarManuals2.com

CarManuals2.com

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 602 735 - © 08/09 BMW AG

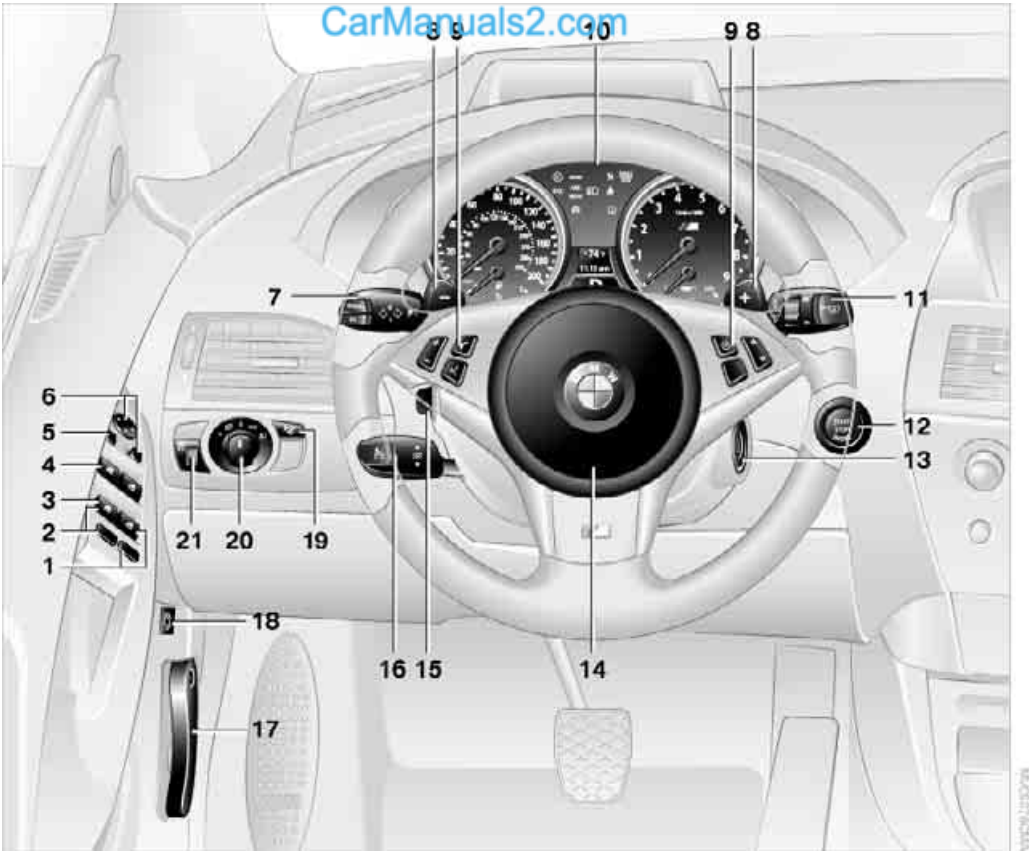
At a glance

This overview of buttons, switches and displays is intended to familiarize you with your vehicle's operating environment.
The section will also assist you in becoming acquainted with the control concepts and options available for operating the various systems.

CarManuals2.com

Cockpit

Around the steering wheel: controls and displays



1 Convertible: opening and closing rear window 37

2 Convertible: opening and closing windows together 37

3 Convertible: opening and closing rear windows 36

4 Opening and closing front windows 36

5 Folding exterior mirrors in and out* 49

6 Adjusting exterior mirrors 49
Automatic curb monitor 49

7
- Turn signals 61
- High beams, headlamp flasher 91
- High-beam Assistant* 91
- Parking lamps* 91
- CHECK Check Control 70
- BC Computer 66

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 602 735 - © 08/09 BMW AG

8 Shift paddles 59

9 Buttons on steering wheel

Mobile phone* 162:

▷ Press: accepting and ending a call, starting dialing* of selected phone number and redialing if no phone number is selected

CarManuals2.com

Volume

Activating/deactivating voice activation system* 22

Changing radio station 139
Selecting music track 144
Scrolling in phone book and in lists with stored phone numbers

MDrive, call up individual settings 50

Changing entertainment source

10 Instrument cluster 12

11 Windshield wipers 62

Rain sensor 62

12 START STOP ENGINE Starting/stopping engine and switching ignition on/off 55

13 Ignition lock 55

14 Horn, entire surface

15 Steering wheel heater* 50

Steering wheel adjustment 50

16 Cruise control 63

17 Releasing hood 192

18 Opening luggage compartment lid 31

19 Head-up Display* 86

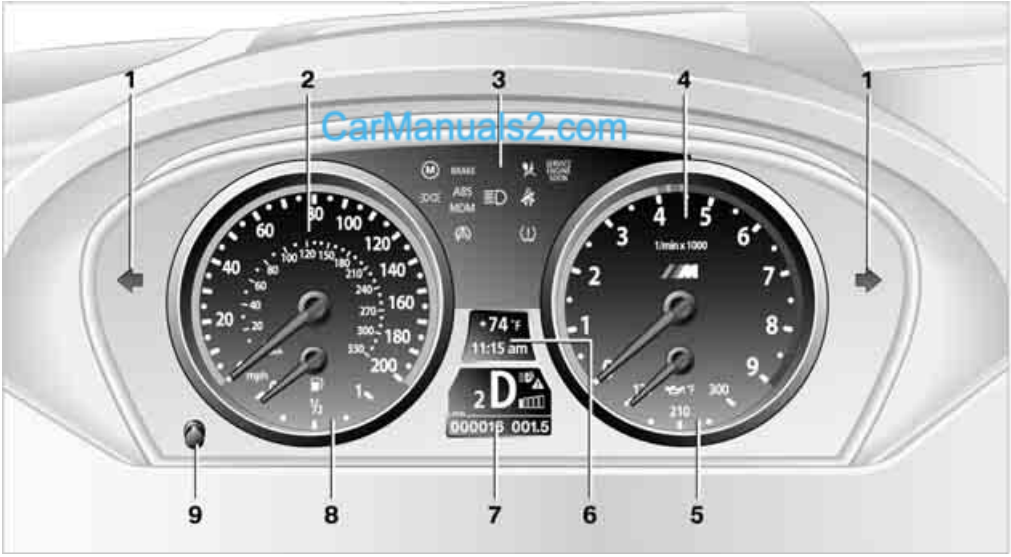
20 Parking lamps 89

Low beams 89
Welcome lamps 89
Automatic headlamp control 89
Daytime running lamps* 90
Welcome lamps 89
Adaptive Light Control* 90
High-beam Assistant* 91

21 Instrument lighting 93

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 602 735 - © 08/09 BMW AG

Instrument cluster



1 Indicator lamps for turn signals

2 Speedometer

3 Indicator and warning lamps 13

4 Tachometer 65

5 Engine oil thermometer 66

6 Display for
- ▷ Computer 66
  Engine oil level 194
- ▷ Indicator and warning lamps 71
- ▷ Speed of cruise control 64

7 Display for
- ▷ Sequential Manual Transmission with Drivelogic 59
- ▷ Engine oil level for manual transmission 194
- ▷ ⚠ Check Control message present 71
- ▷ Odometer and trip odometer 65
- ▷ Date and remaining travel distance for service requirements 68
- ▷ High-beam Assistant* 91

8 Fuel gauge 66

9 Resetting trip odometer 65

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 602 735 - © 08/09 BMW AG

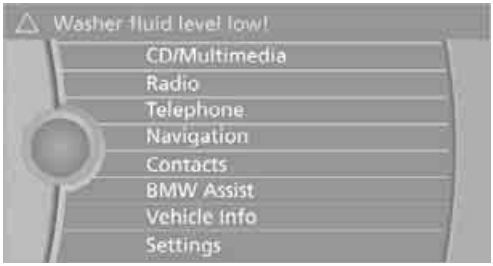
Indicator and warning lamps

The concept

The indicator and warning lamps can light up in different combinations and colors.

Some lamps are tested for proper function by briefly lighting up during starting of the engine or when the ignition is switched on.

Explanatory text messages



Text messages at the upper edge of the Control Display explain the meaning of the displayed indicator and warning lamps.

Additional information, e.g. on the cause and elimination of a malfunction, can be opened via the Check Control system, refer to page 70.

In urgent cases, this information will be shown as soon as the corresponding lamp comes on.

Indicator lamps without text messages

The following indicator lamps signal particular functions:

Parking lamps/low beams 89

High beams/headlamp flasher 91

Parking brake applied 57

Parking brake applied for Canadian models

Lamp flashes:
DSC controls the drive and braking forces for maintaining vehicle stability 76

MDrive 50

M Dynamic Mode 77

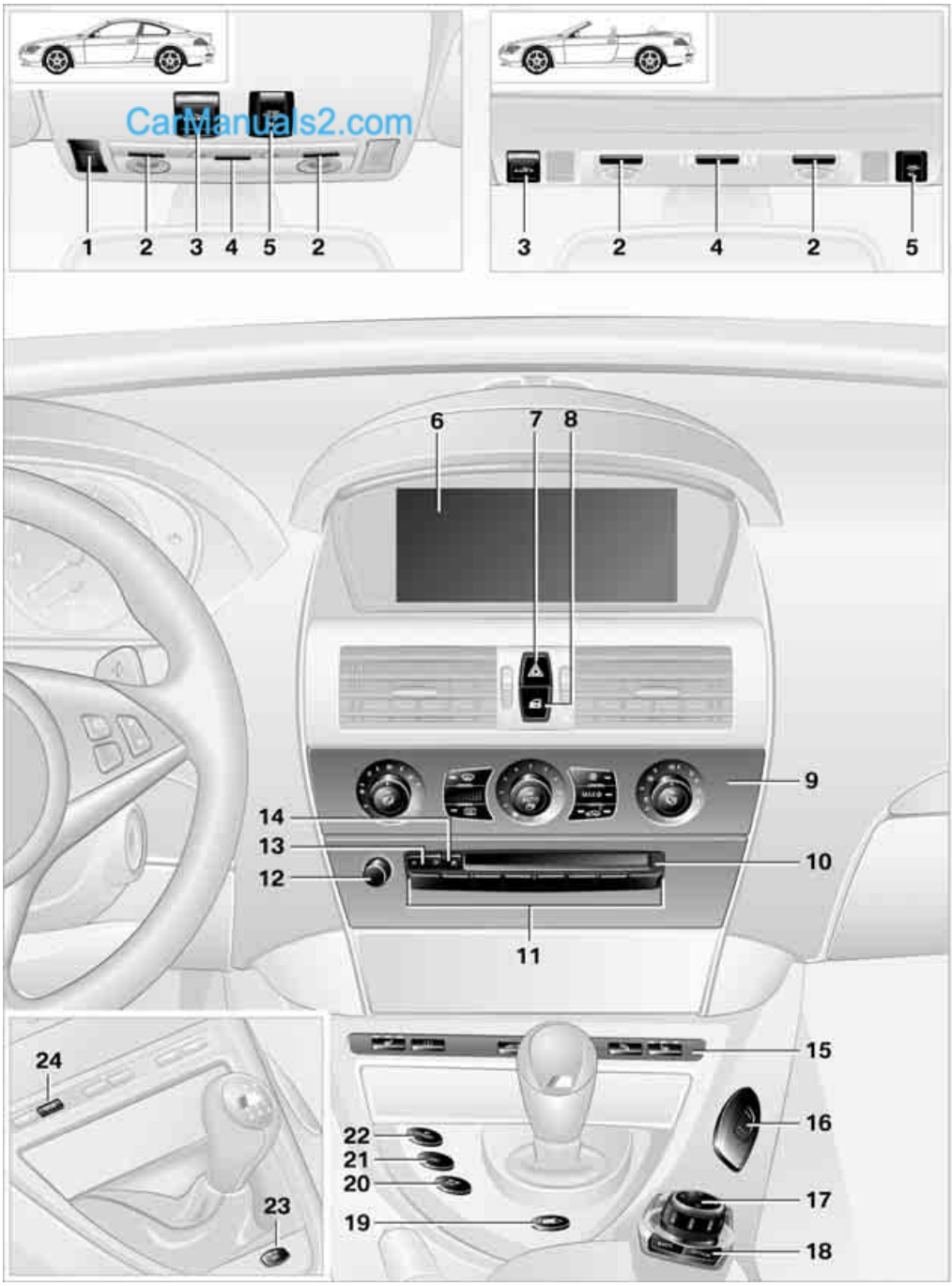
Exhaust-gas values 198

Exhaust-gas values for Canadian models 198

CarManuals2.com

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 602 735 - © 08/09 BMW AG

Around the center console: controls and displays



CarManuals2.com

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 602 735 - © 08/09 BMW AG

1 Microphone for hands-free mode for telephone*
and voice activation system* 22
Convertible: microphone on steering column

2 Reading lamps 93

3 SOS: initiating an emergency request 212

4 Interior lamps 93

5 Passenger airbag status lamp 84

6 Control Display 16

7 Hazard warning flashers

8 Central locking system 30

9 Automatic climate control 94

TEMP Temperature setting, left/right 95

AUTO Automatic air distribution and volume 95

Cooling function 96

AUC Automatic recirculated-air control/recirculated-air mode 96

MAX Maximum cooling 96

REST Residual heat mode 97

OFF Switching off automatic climate control 97

Air volume 96

Defrosting windows and removing condensation 96

Rear window defroster 96

10 CD/DVD drive 136

11 Programmable memory buttons 20

12 Switching entertainment sound output on/off and adjusting volume 136

13 Changing
- ▷ radio station 139
- ▷ track 136

14 Ejecting CD/DVD 144

15 Heated seats 48

PDC Park Distance Control* 75

Flat Tire Monitor 79

Convertible: opening the convertible top 38

Convertible: closing the convertible top 38

16 Bracket for cupholder* 103

17 Controller 16
Can be turned, pressed, or moved in four directions

18 Buttons on the controller 17
Selecting menus directly

19 Drivelogic of Sequential Manual Transmission 59

20 EDC Electronic Damper Control for Sequential Manual Transmission 79

21 DSC Dynamic Stability Control for Sequential Manual Transmission 76

22 M Engine Dynamic Control POWER for Sequential Manual Transmission 60

23 EDC Electronic Damper Control for manual transmission* 79

24 MDM
- ▷ M Dynamic Mode for manual transmission* 76
- ▷ Switching DSC on and off in manual transmission* 77

CarManuals2.com

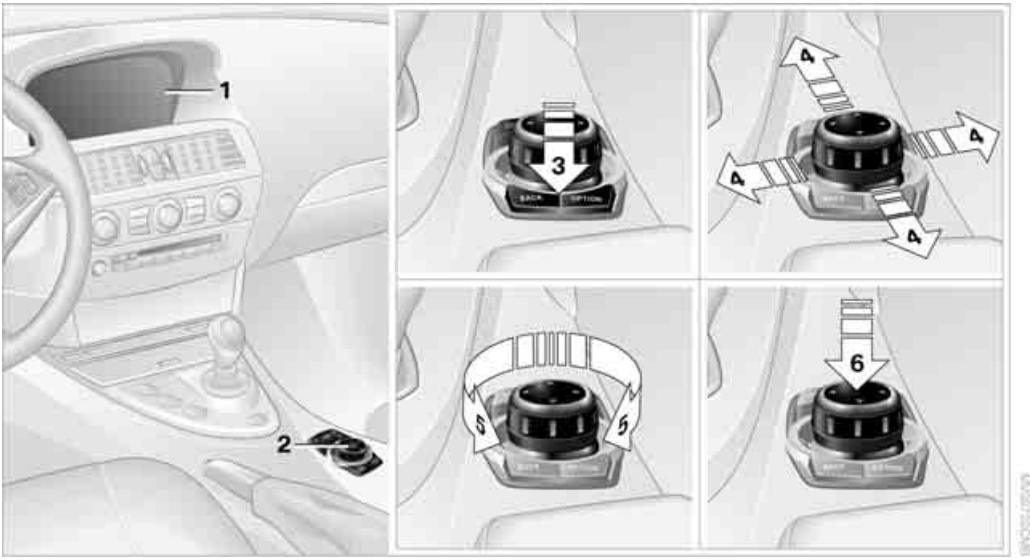
Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 602 735 - © 08/09 BMW AG

iDrive

iDrive combines the functions of a large number of switches. This allows these functions to be operated from a central position. The following section provides an introduction to basic menu navigation. The control of the individual functions is described in connection with the relevant equipment.

CarManuals2.com

Controls



1 Control Display

2 Controller with buttons
You can use the buttons to open the menus directly. The controller can be used to select the menu items and create settings.

- ▷ Call up a menu directly, arrow **3**
- ▷ Move in four directions, arrows **4**
- ▷ Turn, arrow **5**
- ▷ Press, arrow **6**

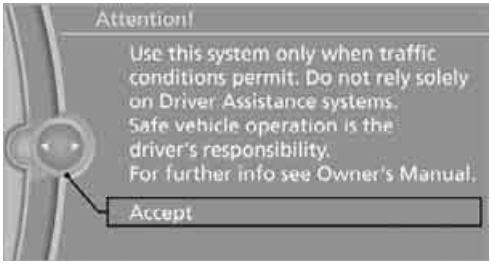
⚠ To avoid posing an unnecessary hazard due to inattention, both to your own vehicle's occupants and to other road users: never attempt to use the controls or make entries unless traffic and road conditions allow.◀

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 602 735 - © 08/09 BMW AG

Buttons on the controller	Function
MENU	Opens the main menu
RADIO	Opens the Radio menu
CD	Opens CD/Multimedia
NAV	Opens the Navigation menu
TEL	Opens the Telephone menu
BACK	Opens the previous menu
OPTION	Opens the Options menu

Basic operation

From radio readiness, refer to page 55, the following message is shown on the Control Display:



To hide the message:
Press the controller.
This displays the start menu.

The message is hidden after approx. 10 seconds.

Opens the main menu

Press the **MENU** button.
The main menu is displayed.

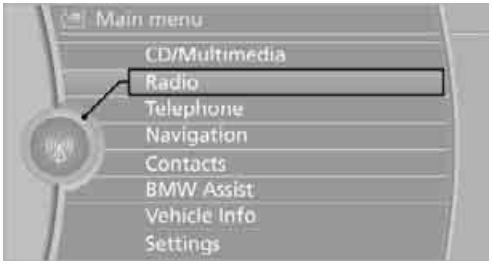
carmanuals2.com

All iDrive functions can be called up via the main menu.

Selecting a menu item

The menu items shown in white can be selected.

1. Turn the controller until the desired menu item is highlighted.



2. Press the controller.

A new menu is displayed or the function is executed.

Menu items in the Owner's Manual

In the Owner's Manual, menu items that can be selected are set in quotation marks, e.g. "Settings".

Changing between panels

After selecting a menu item, e.g. "Radio", a new menu is displayed on a panel. The panels can overlap.

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 602 735 - © 08/09 BMW AG

Move the controller to the left or right to change between the panels.

White arrows pointing to the left or right indicate that additional panels can be opened.

Opens the Options menu

Press the **OPTION** button.
The "Options" menu is displayed.

CarManuals2.com

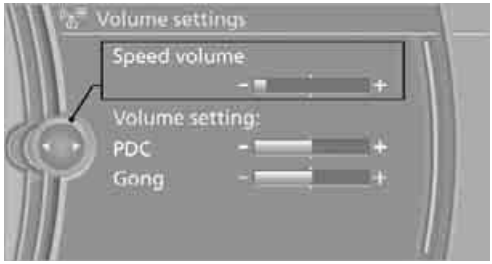
Additional option: move the controller to the right repeatedly until the "Options" menu appears.

The "Options" menu contains the following:

- ▷ Screen settings, refer to page 19.
- ▷ Control options for the selected menu.

Adjusting settings

1. Select a field.
2. Turn the controller until the desired setting is displayed.

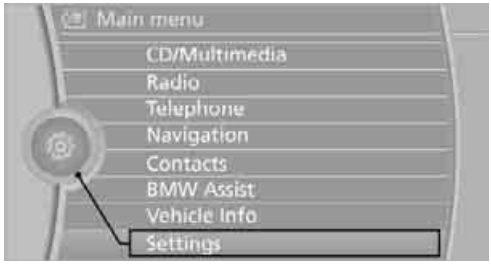


3. Press the controller to confirm the setting.

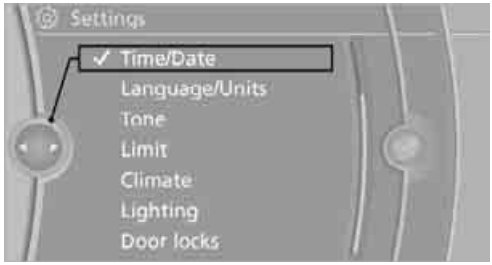
▷ The scroll bar on the right side indicates whether additional menu items or settings can be selected that are currently not visible.◀

An example: setting the clock

1. Press the **MENU** button.
   The main menu is displayed.
2. Turn the controller until "Settings" is highlighted, and then press the controller.

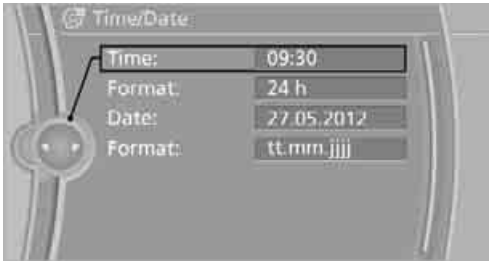


3. Turn the controller until "Time/Date" is highlighted, and then press the controller.



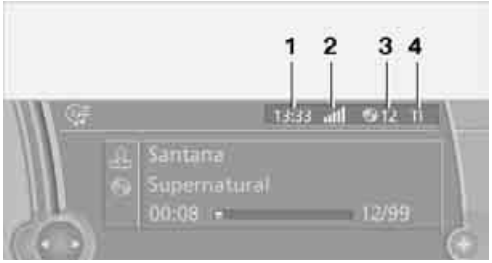
Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 602 735 - © 08/09 BMW AG

4. Turn the controller until "Time:" is highlighted, and then press the controller.



5. Turn the controller to set the hours and press the controller.
6. Turn the controller to set the minutes and press the controller.

Status information



1 Time

2 Display for:

- ▷ Reception strength of the wireless network, depends on the mobile phone
- ▷ Incoming, outgoing or missed call
- ▷ SMS* received
- ▷ Phone book* loading
- ▷ Roaming* active

3 Display for:

- ▷ Entertainment:
  Radio, CD/DVD, external devices
- ▷ Phone book*:
  Name of the mobile phone paired with the vehicle

4 Sound output is switched off or traffic bulletin display*:

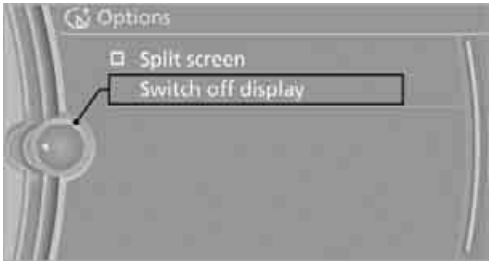
- ▷ "TI":
  Traffic bulletins are switched on.
- ▷ No display:
  Traffic bulletins are switched off.

CarManuals2.com

Other displays:
The status information is temporarily hidden when there are Check Control instructions or inputs via the voice activation system*.

Switching the control display on/off

1. Press the **OPTION** button.
2. "Switch off display"



To switch on, press the controller.

Split screen

Additional information can be displayed on the right side of the split screen, e.g. information from the computer.

In the divided screen view, the so-called split screen, this information remains visible even when you change to another menu.

Switching the split screen on and off

1. Press the **OPTION** button.
2. "Split screen"

✔ The split screen is activated.

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 602 735 - © 08/09 BMW AG

Selecting the display for the split screen content

When the split screen is switched on, you can select the content displayed on the screen.

1. Move the controller to the right repeatedly until the split screen content is selected.
2. Select the display.

Programmable memory buttons

Certain iDrive functions can be stored on the programmable memory keys and called up directly, e.g. radio stations, navigation destinations, phone numbers and entry points into the menu.

CarManuals2.com

Storing functions

1. Highlight the function via the iDrive.
2. 1 ... 6 Press the desired button longer than 2 seconds.

Example for programmable memory keys

Switch the voice instructions for the navigation on/off.

1. "Navigation"
2. "Map"
3. Select the symbol using the controller.
4. 1 ... 6 Press the desired button longer than 2 seconds.

Executing a function

1 ... 6 Press the button.

The function is executed immediately. This means, for example, that the number is dialed when a phone number is selected.

Displaying button assignment

Touch the button with a finger. Do not wear gloves or use objects.

Displaying short info

1 ... 6 Touch the button.

The key assignment is displayed at the top edge of the screen.

Displaying detailed information

1 ... 6 Touch the button longer.

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 602 735 - © 08/09 BMW AG

Letters and numbers

Entering letters and numbers

1. Turn the controller: select the letters or numbers.
2. Select additional letters or numbers if needed.
3. "OK": confirm the entry.

Symbol	Function
⇤	Press the controller: delete one letter or number
⇤	Press the controller for an extended period: delete all letters or numbers
␣	Enter a blank space

Switching between letters and numbers

Depending on the menu, you can switch between entering letters and numbers:

Symbol	Function
ABC	Entering letters
123	Entering numbers

Wordmatch concept during navigation

Entry of names and addresses: the selection is narrowed down every time a letter is entered and letters may be added automatically.

Destination search: the entries are continuously compared to the data stored in the vehicle.

▷ The only letters offered for entering addresses are those for which data are available.

Town/city names can be entered with the spelling used in any of the languages available on the Control Display.

CarManuals2.com

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 602 735 - © 08/09 BMW AG

Voice activation system*

The concept

The voice activation system allows you to control operation of various vehicle systems without removing your hands from the steering wheel.

Carmanuals2.com

Individual menu items on the Control Display can be spoken as commands. This frees you of having to use the controller.

The voice activation system transforms your oral commands into control signals for the selected systems and provides support in the form of instructions or questions.

The voice activation system includes a special microphone.

The microphone is located:

- ▷ Near the interior rearview mirror in the Coupe, refer to page 14
- ▷ On the steering column in the Convertible

Precondition

Via iDrive, set the language that applies for the voice activation system in order to enable identification of the spoken commands. To set the language of iDrive, refer to page 73.

Symbols in Owner's Manual

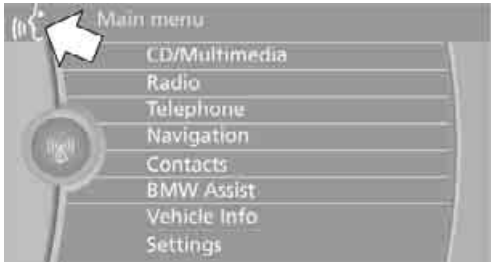
›...‹ Say the specified commands word for word.
››...‹‹ Indicates responses of the voice activation system.

Voice commands

Activating voice activation system

1. Press the button.

This symbol on the Control Display and an acoustic signal tell you that the voice activation system can respond to commands.



2. Say the command.
   The command is displayed on the Control Display.

This symbol is shown on the Control Display when you can input additional commands.
If no other commands are possible, then operate the equipment via iDrive.

Terminating or canceling voice command

Press the button on the steering wheel
or

›Cancel‹

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 602 735 - © 08/09 BMW AG

In dialogs that call for a text of your choice, the procedure can only be canceled using the button on the steering wheel.

Possible commands

The commands available in each case depend on the menu item selected on the Control Display.
To have the possible commands read aloud:

›Voice commands‹

For example, if "CD/DVD" is selected, the commands for operating CD/Multimedia are read aloud.

Calling up functions immediately via short commands

Short commands enable you to perform certain functions immediately, irrespective of which menu item is selected, refer to page 224.

An example: selecting the track of a CD

1. Switch on Entertainment sound output if necessary.
2. Press the button on the steering wheel.

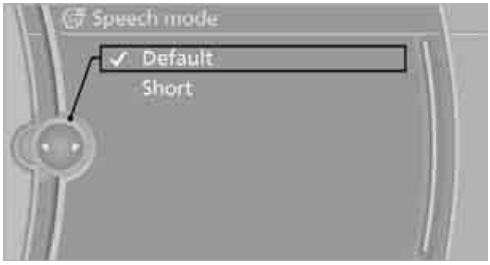
3. Select the music track, e.g.:
   ›CD track 4‹
   System says:
   ››Track 4‹‹

CarManuals2.com

Setting the voice dialog

You can set whether the system should use the standard dialog or a shorter variant. In the shorter variant of the voice dialog, the prompts and responses from the system are abbreviated.

1. "Settings"
2. "Language/Units"
3. "Speech mode:"



4. Select a setting:
   ▷ "Default"
   ▷ "Short"

Notes

To operate the phone by voice, refer to page 169.◀

For voice commands, bear in mind the following:

- ▷ Do not use the voice activation system to initiate an Emergency Request. In stressful situations, the voice and vocal pitch can change. This can unnecessarily delay the establishment of a telephone connection.
- ▷ Say the commands and numbers smoothly and at normal volume, avoiding excessive emphasis and pauses. This also applies when spelling out and saying a full word during destination entry.
- ▷ When selecting a radio station, use the common pronunciation of the station name.
- ▷ For entries in the voice-activated phone book, only use names in the language of the voice activation system and no abbreviations.
- ▷ Keep the doors, windows and convertible top closed to prevent interference from ambient noise.
- ▷ Avoid making other noise in the vehicle while speaking.

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 602 735 - © 08/09 BMW AG

CarManuals2.com

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 602 735 - © 08/09 BMW AG

Controls

This chapter is intended to provide you with information for complete control of your vehicle. Its extensive array of features and accessories, both for driving and for your own safety, comfort and convenience, are described here.

CarManuals2.com

Opening and closing

Keys/remote control

1 Remote control with integrated key

2 Spare key

3 Adapter for spare key, in glove compartment

Remote control with integrated key

Each remote control contains a battery which is charged in the ignition lock while driving. Drive a longer distance with each remote control at least twice a year to keep the battery charged. For Comfort Access*, the remote control contains a replaceable battery, refer to page 35.

Depending on which remote control is detected by the vehicle during unlocking, different settings are activated and executed in the vehicle, refer to Personal Profile, page 26.

Information on the required for maintenance is also stored in the remote control, refer to Service data in remote control, page 197.

Integrated key

Press button **1** to unlock the key.

The integrated key fits the following locks:

- ▷ Hotel function, refer to page 31
- ▷ Driver's door, refer to page 29
- ▷ Luggage compartment lid, refer to page 31

New remote controls

To obtain additional or replace lost keys, new remote controls with an integrated key are available at your BMW center.

Spare key

Store the spare key in a safe place such as your wallet. This key is not intended for regular use.

The spare key and integrated key of the remote control fit the same locks.

Adapter for spare key

The adapter is required so that the vehicle can be started with the spare key or radio readiness can be switched on.

CarManuals2.com

Remove the adapter from the holder in the glove compartment and slide the spare key into the adapter before use.

Personal Profile

The concept

You can set a number of functions of your BMW individually according to your preferences. Personal Profile ensures that most of these settings are stored for the remote control currently in use without you having to do anything. When

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 602 735 - © 08/09 BMW AG

the vehicle is unlocked, the corresponding remote control is detected and the settings stored for it are called up and carried out.

This means that you will always find your BMW set to your own personal settings even if another person with his/her own remote control and settings has used the vehicle since the last time you drove it. The individual settings are stored for a maximum of four remote controls, for two with Comfort Access*.

Personal Profile settings

Details on the settings are provided on the specified pages.

- Behavior of the central locking system when unlocking vehicle, refer to page 28
- Automatic locking of the vehicle, refer to page 30
- Displays on Control Display:
  - 12h/24h clock mode, refer to page 70
  - Date format, refer to page 70
  - Brightness of the Control Display, refer to page 74
  - Units of measure for consumption, route/distances, temperature and pressure, refer to page 68
  - Language on the Control Display, refer to page 73
- Lighting settings:
  - Triple turn signal activation, refer to page 61
  - Welcome lamps, refer to page 89
  - Pathway lighting, refer to page 90
  - Daytime running lamps*, refer to page 90
  - High-beam Assistant*, refer to page 91
- Drivelogic driving program in the Sequential mode, refer to page 59
- Individual settings for MDrive, refer to page 50
- PDC Park Distance Control*: optical warning, refer to page 75
- Head-up Display*: selection and brightness of display, refer to page 86
- Automatic climate control: for AUTO program and intensity, cooling function, and automatic recirculated air control/recirculated air mode, temperature, air distribution, temperature in the upper body region, refer to page 95
- Navigation system*: voice instructions for destination guidance, refer to page 127

In addition, the following, most recently selected settings are recalled during unlocking:

- Programmable memory buttons: selecting stored functions, refer to page 20
- Driver's seat, exterior-mirror and steering-wheel position, refer to page 45
- Audio sources: volume and tone settings, refer to page 136
- Radio: display of stored stations, refer to page 141
- Phone: adjusting volume, refer to page 165

Central locking system

The concept

The central locking system functions when the driver's door is closed.

The system simultaneously engages and releases the locks on the following:

- Doors
- Compartment in the front center console
- Luggage compartment lid
- Fuel filler flap

Operating from outside

- Via the remote control
- Using door lock
- With Comfort Access* via the door handles

These actions operate the anti-theft system* at the same time. It prevents the doors from being unlocked using the lock buttons or door handles. The interior lamps and the courtesy lamps* are also switched on and off with the

CarManuals2.com

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 602 735 - © 08/09 BMW AG

remote control. The alarm system is armed/disarmed at the same time.
You can find more detailed information on the alarm system on page 33.

Operating from inside

Via the central locking button, refer to page 30.
The fuel filler flap and the compartment in the front center console are not locked, refer to page 30.

In the event of a serious accident, the central locking system unlocks automatically. In addition, the hazard warning flashers and interior lamps come on.

Opening and closing: Using remote control

Persons or animals left unattended in a parked vehicle can lock the doors from the inside. Always take along the remote control when leaving the vehicle so that the vehicle can then be opened from the outside.◀

Unlocking

CarManuals2.com

Press the button.
The interior lamps, the courtesy lamps*, and the welcome lamps are switched on.

Setting unlocking behavior

You can set whether the first press of the button unlocks only the driver's door or the entire vehicle.

iDrive, for operating principle refer to page 16.

1. "Settings"
2. "Door locks"
3. "Unlock button"

4. Select a menu item:
   - ▷ "All doors"
     Pressing the button once unlocks the entire vehicle.
   - ▷ "Driver's door only"
     Pressing the button once unlocks the driver's door and the fuel filler flap. Pressing the button twice unlocks the entire vehicle.
   - ▷ "Comfort opening", refer to page 28
5. Press the controller.

Convenient opening mode

Press and hold the button:

- ▷ Coupe: the windows are opened.
- ▷ Convertible: the windows and the convertible top are opened.

Watch the convertible top during the opening process to be sure that no one is injured. Releasing the button stops the operation.◀

Locking

Press the LOCK button.

Do not lock the vehicle from the outside if persons are inside, as unlocking from the inside is not possible without special knowledge.◀

Switching on interior lamps

With vehicle locked:
Press the LOCK button.
You can also use this function to locate your vehicle in parking garages etc.

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 602 735 - © 08/09 BMW AG

Panic mode*

You can trigger the alarm system in case of danger:

Press the button for at least 3 seconds.

Switching off alarm: press any button.

Opening luggage compartment lid

Press the button for approx. 1 second.

The luggage compartment lid opens, regardless of whether it was previously locked or unlocked.

A previously locked luggage compartment lid is also locked again after closing. Coupe: during opening, the luggage compartment lid pivots back and up. Make sure that adequate clearance is available before opening.◀

Confirmation signals

You can activate or deactivate the confirmation signals.

iDrive, for operating principle refer to page 16.

1. "Settings"
2. "Door locks"
3. "Flash when lock/unlock"

CarManuals2.com

4. Press the controller.

Flashing when locking/unlocking the vehicle is switched on.

Malfunction

The remote control may malfunction due to local radio waves. Should the remote control fail to operate due to interference of this kind, unlock and lock the vehicle via the door lock using a key.

If it is no longer possible to lock the vehicle using the remote control, then the battery is discharged. Use this remote control during an extended drive; this will recharge the battery, refer to page 26.

For US owners only

The transmitter and receiver units comply with part 15 of the FCC/Federal Communication Commission regulations. Operation is governed by the following:

FCC ID:
LX8766S
LX8766E
LX8CAS
LX8CAS2

Compliance statement:
This device complies with part 15 of the FCC Rules. Operation is subject to the following two conditions:

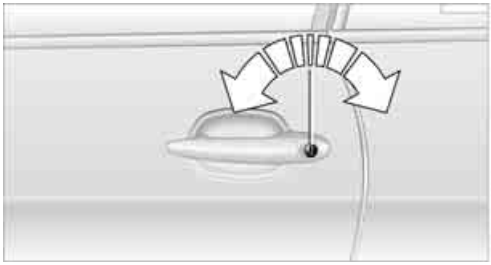
- This device must not cause harmful interference, and
- this device must accept any interference received, including interference that may cause undesired operation.

Any unauthorized modifications or changes to these devices could void the user's authority to operate this equipment.◀

Opening and closing: Using door lock

Do not lock the vehicle from the outside if persons are inside, as unlocking from the inside is not possible without special knowledge.◀

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 602 735 - © 08/09 BMW AG



When unlocking

1. Turning the key once unlocks the driver's door and the fuel filler flap.
2. A second turn of the key unlocks the passenger door and luggage compartment lid.

Convenient opening and closing

You also have the option of operating the windows and the convertible top on the Convertible from the driver's door lock.

Turn and hold the key in the positions for unlocking or locking.

⚠ Keep a close eye on the closing process and also on the opening process of the convertible top to be sure that no one is injured. Releasing the key stops the operation.◀

CarManuals2.com

Manual operation

In the event of an electrical malfunction, you can turn a key all the way to the right or left in the door lock to lock or unlock the driver's door.

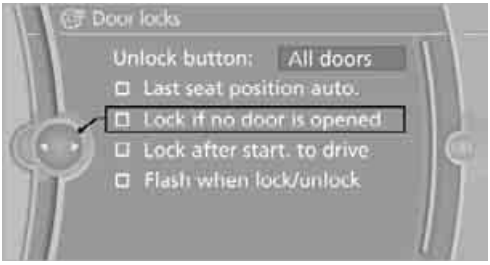
Opening and closing: from inside

This button serves to unlock or lock doors and the luggage compartment lid, but does not activate the anti-theft system. The fuel filler flap remains unlocked.

Automatic locking

iDrive, for operating principle refer to page 16.

1. "Settings"
2. "Door locks"
3. Select the desired function:
   - ▷ "Lock if no door is opened"
     The central locking system locks again after a short time if no door has been opened.
   - ▷ "Lock after start. to drive"
     The central locking system locks the vehicle as soon as you start to drive.



4. Press the controller.

✓ Automatic locking is switched on and is stored for the remote control currently in use.

Unlocking and opening

- ▷ Either unlock both doors at the same time with the button for the central locking sys-

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 602 735 - © 08/09 BMW AG

tem and then pull the door handle above the armrest or

▷ pull on the door handle of each door twice: the first time unlocks the door, the second time opens it.

CarManuals2.com

Locking

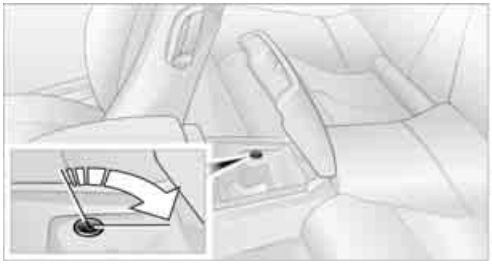
▷ Use the central locking button to lock both of the doors simultaneously, or

▷ press down the lock button of a door.
To prevent you from being locked out, the open driver's door cannot be locked using the lock button.

⚠ Persons or animals left unattended in a parked vehicle can lock the doors from the inside. Always take along the remote control when leaving the vehicle so that the vehicle can then be opened from the outside.◀

Hotel function

The hotel function locks the compartment in the front center console and the luggage compartment lid separately and disconnects them from the central locking system. If you hand over the remote control without the integrated key, refer to page 26, e.g. at a hotel, then this prevents access to the luggage compartment and to the compartment in the front center console.



Turn the key to the right, refer to illustration, until the key slot points in the direction of travel and then remove:
The hotel function is activated after subsequent locking or unlocking of the vehicle. The system locks the luggage compartment lid and the compartment in the front center console and disconnects them from the central locking system.

Unlocking manually

In order to manually unlock the compartment in the front center console in the event of an electrical malfunction, turn the key all the way to the right until it reaches the stop.

▷ If unlocking was manual, return the lock to the home position, i.e. all the way back to the left, before reactivating the hotel function.◀

Doors

Automatic soft closing*

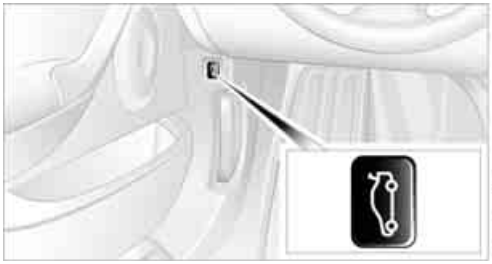
To close the doors, merely push them gently. The closing process will then be carried out automatically.

⚠ Make sure that the closing path of the doors is clear; otherwise injuries may result.◀

Luggage compartment lid

▷ During opening, the luggage compartment lid pivots back and up. Make sure that adequate clearance is available before opening.◀

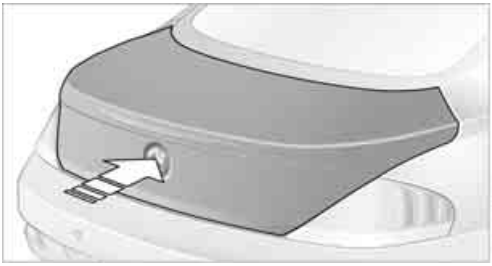
Opening from inside



Press the button:
The luggage compartment lid opens, provided that it is not locked or the hotel function is not activated, refer to the above section.

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 602 735 - © 08/09 BMW AG

Opening from outside



Press the upper half of the BMW emblem or press the button on the remote control for approx. 1 second: the luggage compartment lid opens.

Convertible: if the convertible top is not completely open or closed, then the luggage compartment lid cannot be opened, refer to page 38.◀

Unlocking manually

The luggage compartment lid lock is located under the BMW emblem. All keys, refer to page 26, fit the luggage-compartment lid lock.

Turn the key toward the right up to the stop: the luggage compartment lid opens.

If you use the lock to open the luggage compartment lid while the alarm system is armed, the alarm will be triggered. To prevent this, you should deactivate the alarm beforehand.
If the alarm is inadvertently triggered: switch off the alarm, refer to page 33.◀

Closing

Make sure that the closing path of the luggage compartment lid is clear; otherwise, injuries may result.◀

The handle recesses on the interior trim of the luggage compartment lid make it easier to pull down.

Emergency release

Pull the lever in the cargo area. The luggage compartment lid is unlocked.

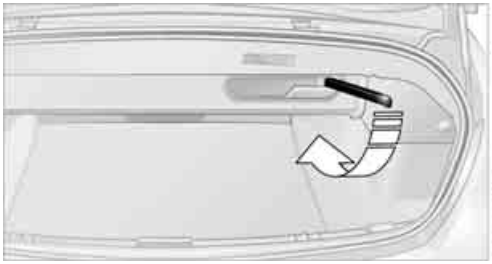
Luggage compartment

There are four lashing eyes on the inner corners of the luggage compartment for securing luggage nets* or securing straps to fix luggage in position.
Also refer to Securing cargo, page 111.

CarManuals2.com

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 602 735 - © 08/09 BMW AG

Convertible: increasing luggage compartment capacity



With the convertible top closed, you can increase the luggage compartment capacity: To do so, unfold the handle and press it downward in the direction of travel, refer to arrow. This moves the convertible top compartment floor into the raised position.

Before opening the convertible top, carry out this procedure in reverse order.

▷ The convertible top cannot be opened if the convertible top compartment floor is in the raised position.◀

Alarm system

The concept

The vehicle alarm system responds:

- ▷ To the opening of a door, the hood, or the luggage compartment lid
- ▷ To movements in the vehicle interior: interior motion sensor, refer to page 34
- ▷ To changes in the vehicle's tilt if someone attempts to steal the wheels or tow the vehicle
- ▷ To interruptions in battery voltage

Unauthorized operations are briefly signaled by the alarm system:

- ▷ with an acoustic alarm
- ▷ by switching on the hazard warning flashers
- ▷ by flashing the high beams

Arming and disarming alarm system

When you lock or unlock the vehicle, either with the remote control or at the door lock, the alarm system is armed or disarmed at the same time.

You can open the luggage compartment lid, even with the system armed, by using the button of the remote control, refer to page 29. When the luggage compartment lid is closed, it is once again locked and monitored.

Switching off alarm

- ▷ Unlock the vehicle using the remote control, refer to page 28, or
- ▷ insert the remote control all the way into the ignition lock.

Indicator lamp displays

- ▷ The indicator lamp below the interior rear-view mirror flashes continuously: the system is armed.
- ▷ The indicator lamp flashes after locking: the doors, hood or luggage compartment lid are not properly closed. Even if you do not close the alerted area, the system begins to monitor the remaining areas, and the indicator lamp flashes continuously after approx. 10 seconds. However, the interior motion sensor is not activated.
- ▷ The indicator lamp goes out after unlocking: your vehicle has not been disturbed while you were away.
- ▷ The indicator lamp flashes after unlocking until the remote control is inserted into the ignition lock, however for a maximum of approx. 5 minutes: your vehicle has been disturbed while you were away.

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 602 735 - © 08/09 BMW AG

Tilt alarm sensor

The tilt of the vehicle is monitored. The alarm system reacts, e.g. in case of an attempted wheel theft or towing.

Interior motion sensor

Coupe:
The condition for proper operation of the interior motion sensor is closed windows.

Convertible:
Monitors the interior up to the height of the seat cushions. This means that the alarm system, including the interior motion sensor, is armed even if the convertible top is open. Falling objects, e.g. leaves, can trigger false alarms, refer to Avoiding unintentional alarms.

Avoiding unintentional alarms

The tilt alarm sensor and interior motion sensor may be switched off at the same time. This prevents unintentional alarms, e.g. in the following situations:

- In two-level garages
- When transporting on car-carrying trains, by sea or on a trailer
- When animals are to remain in the vehicle

CarManuals2.com

Switching off tilt alarm sensor and interior motion sensor

Press the LOCK button on the remote control again as soon as the vehicle is locked.

The indicator lamp lights up briefly and then flashes continuously. The tilt alarm sensor and the interior motion sensor are switched off until the next time the vehicle is unlocked and subsequently locked again.

Comfort Access*

Comfort Access allows you to access your vehicle without having to hold the remote control in your hand. It is sufficient to carry the remote control with you, e.g. in your jacket pocket. The vehicle automatically detects the associated remote control in the immediate vicinity or in the interior.

Comfort Access supports the following functions:

- Unlocking/locking vehicle
- Convenient closing with Coupe
- Opening luggage compartment lid separately
- Starting engine

Functional requirement

- The vehicle or the luggage compartment lid can only be locked if the vehicle detects that the remote control you are carrying is outside the vehicle.
- The next unlocking and locking cycle is not possible until after approx. 2 seconds.
- The engine can only be started if the vehicle detects that the remote control is located in the vehicle.

Comparison with ordinary remote control

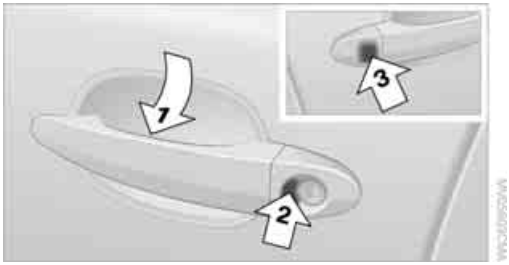
You can control the functions mentioned previously with the Comfort Access or by pressing the buttons on the remote control. Therefore, please familiarize yourself with the information on opening and closing beginning on page 26 beforehand.

The special features when using Comfort Access are described in the following.

▷ Should a short delay occur when opening or closing the windows or the convertible top, the system is checking whether a remote control is located in the vehicle. Please repeat opening or closing if necessary.◀

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 602 735 - © 08/09 BMW AG

Unlocking



Grasp a door handle fully, refer to arrow **1**, but do not touch the surfaces, arrow **2** or **3** when doing so. This corresponds to pressing the button.

Locking

- On the driver's door, touch the highlighted surface, arrow **2**, with a finger for approx. 1 second, but do not grasp the door handle.
- On the front passenger door, touch the highlighted surface, arrow **3**, with the back of your hand for approx. 1 second, but do not grasp the door handle.

This corresponds to pressing the LOCK button.

Please make sure that the ignition and all electronic systems/consumers are switched off before locking to save the battery.◀

Coupe: Convenient closing

Hold a finger or the back of your hand against the surface, arrow **2** or **3**, but do not grasp the door handle while doing so.

The windows are closed.

Watch during the closing process to be sure that no one is injured. Removing the hand from the door handle stops the closing process immediately.◀

Opening luggage compartment lid separately

CarManuals2.com

Press the upper half of the BMW emblem. This corresponds to pressing the button.

If a remote control accidentally left in the luggage compartment is detected inside the locked vehicle after the luggage compartment lid has been closed, then the luggage compartment lid opens again. The hazard warning flashers flash and a signal* sounds.◀

Switching on radio readiness

By pressing the Start/Stop button, you switch on the radio readiness, refer to page 55.

When doing so, do not depress the brake or clutch pedal, otherwise the engine will start immediately.◀

Starting engine

You can start the engine or switch on the ignition if a remote control is located in the interior of the vehicle. It need not be inserted in the ignition lock, refer to page 55.

If you take the remote control with you when leaving the vehicle with the engine running, a warning lamp lights up. In addition, a message appears on the Control Display. As long as no remote control is detected, it is only possible to restart the engine within approx. 10 seconds after it is switched off.

Malfunction

The Comfort Access function may malfunction due to local radio waves. If this occurs, then open or close the vehicle with the buttons on the remote control or with a key. To start the engine following this, insert the remote control in the ignition lock.

When unlocking or locking/Convenient closing do not simultaneously grasp the door handle and touch the surfaces, arrow **2** or **3**. Otherwise, you may limit the function.

Replacing battery

If the battery of the remote control is dead, a message will appear in the Control Display.

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 602 735 - © 08/09 BMW AG

1. Remove integrated key from remote control, refer to page 26.

2. Remove cover.
3. Lay in new battery with positive side facing upward.
4. Press cover closed.

Return used battery to a recycling collection point or to your BMW center.◀

Windows

To prevent injuries, exercise care when closing the windows and keep them in your field of vision until they are shut.
Always take along the remote control when you leave the vehicle, otherwise children could, for example, operate the windows and injure themselves.◀

Coupe: Opening, closing

▷ Press switch to resistance point:
The window continues to open as long as you keep the switch pressed.

▷ Press the switch beyond the resistance point:
The window opens automatically. Pressing the switch again stops the opening movement.

You can close the windows in the same manner by pulling the switch.

Convertible: Opening, closing

To close the side windows while the vehicle is being driven, always close the rear windows first or all four windows simultaneously; otherwise, the windows cannot close tightly at higher speeds.◀

Individually

▷ Press switch to resistance point:
The window continues to open as long as you keep the switch pressed.

▷ Press the switch beyond the resistance point:
The window opens automatically. Pressing the switch again stops the opening movement.

You can close the windows in the same manner by pulling the switch. The rear windows cannot be closed automatically.

CarManuals2.com

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 602 735 - © 08/09 BMW AG

Together

1. Briefly press button **1**:
   The LEDs in button **1** and switch **2** light up for approx. 10 seconds.
2. Press switch **2**:
   - ▷ Down to the resistance point:
     All windows, including the rear window, continue to open as long as you press the switch.
     You can close the windows in the same manner by pulling the switch.
   - ▷ Press the switch beyond the resistance point:
     All windows open automatically. Pressing the switch again stops the opening movement.

Briefly press button **1** again to deactivate the function. The LEDs go out.

Rear window

1. Briefly press button **1**:
   The LEDs in button **1** and switch **2** light up for approx. 10 seconds.
2. Press switch **2**:
   - ▷ Down to the resistance point:
     The rear window continues to open for as long as you hold down the switch.
     You can close the rear window in the same manner by pulling the switch.
   - ▷ Press the switch beyond the resistance point:
     The rear window opens automatically. Pressing the switch again stops the opening movement.

Briefly press button **1** again to deactivate the function. The LEDs go out.

▷ The rear window opens and closes automatically when you open or close the convertible top.◀

For information on using the Convenient opening and closing mode at the door lock or with the remote control, refer to page 28 or 30.

Coupe: For information on Convenient closing with Comfort Access, refer to page 35.

After switching off ignition

You can still operate the windows with the remote control removed or the ignition switched off for approx. 1 minute, as long as neither of the doors has been opened.

Pinch protection system

If the closing force exceeds a specific value as a window closes, the closing action is interrupted and the window reopens slightly.

⚠ Despite the pinch protection system, inspect the window's travel path prior to closing it, as the safety system might fail to detect certain kinds of obstructions, such as thin objects, and the window would continue closing.
Do not install any accessories in the range of movement of the windows, otherwise the pinch protection system will be impaired.
Convertible: the rear side windows and rear window are not equipped with a pinch protection system. Therefore, watch the rear side windows and the rear window during closing, otherwise injuries can occur.◀

CarManuals2.com

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 602 735 - © 08/09 BMW AG

Closing without pinch protection system

In case of danger from outside or if, for example, ice on the window prevents normal closing, proceed as follows:

1. Pull the switch beyond the resistance point and hold. The pinch protection system is limited and the window opens slightly if the closing force exceeds a certain value.
2. Pull the switch beyond the resistance point and hold again within approx. 4 seconds. The window closes without the pinch protection system.

Convertible: Top

The fully automatic convertible top combines secure weather protection with simple and easy-to-use operation.

Here are a few tips for getting the maximum pleasure from your Convertible:

▷ It is advisable to close the convertible top when the vehicle is parked. The closed convertible top not only protects the passenger compartment from unforeseen weather damage, it also provides a certain amount of protection from theft. Nonetheless, even if the convertible top is closed, only keep valuables in the locked luggage compartment.

▷ Do not attach luggage rack systems to the convertible top.

CarManuals2.com

⚠ In order to avoid damage, do not move the convertible top at temperatures below +14 °F /–10 °C.
Do not leave the convertible top in its storage compartment for longer than one day when wet; otherwise, damage from moisture can occur.
Do not place any objects on the convertible top; otherwise, if the top were to be operated, these objects could fall off and lead to damage or injury.
Never move the convertible top when the roll-over protection system is raised.
Driving without having completed the opening or closing action can lead to damage or injury.
Do not place hands in the top mechanism during the opening and closing action. Keep children away from the travel path of the convertible top.
For safety reasons, do not move the convertible top unless the vehicle is stationary.◀

▷ If you have initiated top movement with the vehicle at a stop and then start to drive, e.g. at a traffic light, you can continue the initiated operation up to a speed of 20 mph/ 30 km/h:
To do so, press and hold the corresponding button.◀

▷ Partial vacuums that occur at higher speeds in the passenger compartment can make the convertible top flap. Use the automatic climate control to increase the air volume so that a partial vacuum in the vehicle does not occur.◀

Prior to opening and closing

▷ Observe the safety precautions above.

▷ Ensure that the convertible top compartment floor in the luggage compartment is folded down, refer to page 33, as otherwise the convertible top cannot be opened.

▷ Make sure that the luggage compartment lid is closed.

Opening and closing

From radio readiness, refer to page 55, with the vehicle stationary:

▷ To avoid putting excessive strain on the battery, only move the convertible top when the engine is running if possible.
Before closing the convertible top, remove foreign objects from the windshield frame, as these might inhibit closing of the convertible top.◀

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 602 735 - © 08/09 BMW AG

1 To close, press and hold the button until the process is complete

2 LED

3 To open, press and hold the button until the process is complete

▷ When the button for operating the convertible top is pressed, the side windows move down all the way and the rear window is lowered completely.
If the convertible top is not completely open or closed, then the luggage compartment lid cannot be opened.◀

LED

In the following situations, in addition to the LED, a message appears in the Control Display and an acoustic signal may sound:

▷ During convertible top operation, the LED lights up green. It goes out as soon as the opening or closing action is finished.

▷ If the LED flashes red when you release the button, the opening or closing action has not yet finished.

▷ If the LED lights up red when the button is pressed, either the convertible top compartment floor in the luggage compartment is in the raised position or a malfunction has occurred. The convertible top cannot be moved.

Interruption

The automatic sequence of movements is interrupted if the button for top operation is released. The sequence can be continued in the desired direction by pressing the appropriate button.
If the opening or closing action is interrupted for a longer period, the convertible top remains in that position for approx. 15 minutes before it slowly moves to a stable position.

⚠ A convertible top which is not completely opened or closed presents a danger.
Do not interrupt and continue the closing action several times in succession; otherwise, the top mechanism can be damaged.◀

▷ If the convertible top is not completely open or closed, then the luggage compartment lid cannot be opened.◀

Convenient opening and closing with remote control and via door lock

Refer to pages 28 and 30.

Closing manually

⚠ Only close the convertible top manually if absolutely necessary; never open it manually. The convertible top compartment lid cannot be locked in the event of an electrical malfunction and would open while the vehicle is being driven.
Improper handling can lead to damage.◀

CarManuals2.com

Before closing

1. Open luggage compartment lid.
2. Take the Allen wrench and the screwdriver from the onboard tool kit, refer to page 203.
3. Pry out the two buttons in the luggage compartment with the screwdriver and then pull firmly. This unlocks the convertible top compartment lid.

4. Close luggage compartment lid.

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 602 735 - © 08/09 BMW AG

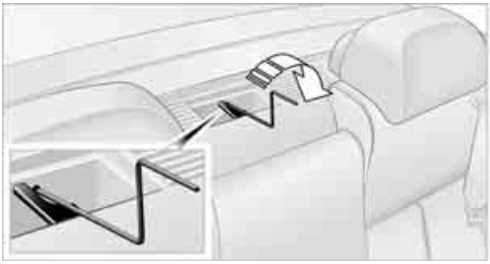
During manual convertible top operation, the luggage compartment lid cannot be opened.◀

5. Completely open the side windows and the rear window.
   If the rear window cannot be opened using the switch, it must be lowered manually.

Opening rear window manually

1. Pry out the cover between the rear head restraints. To do so, place the screwdriver as close as possible to the locking elements, as shown in the illustration.

2. Insert the Allen wrench as far as possible into the opening and turn firmly in the direction indicated by the arrow until the rear window is completely open.



Closing

Perform the following work steps with the assistance of a second person and with the doors open, otherwise injury and damage to the convertible top can occur.◀

1. Push the cover **1** on the left and right of the side panel forward. Reach into the resulting openings and raise the convertible top compartment lid **2** as far as it will go.

2. Grasp the top with both hands at the left and right side frame, arrow **3**.

   Only lift out the top by the side frame, otherwise the top may be damaged.◀

CarManuals2.com

3. Together with the other person, pull the two sides of the convertible top out simultaneously and pivot forward. When doing so, keep the convertible top compartment lid open, arrow **4**, e.g. with your shoulder.

Do not carry out the next operation, raising top ends, until the top has been swung forward, otherwise damage can occur.◀

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 602 735 - © 08/09 BMW AG

4. Raise the two convertible top ends as far as possible, arrow **5**, and close the convertible top compartment lid, arrow **6**.

5. Fold the top ends down onto the convertible top compartment lid.
6. From the interior, take out the cover in the center of the front top frame; use a screwdriver if necessary.
7. Insert the Allen wrench into the opening provided.

8. From the outside, both persons pull the front frame of the convertible top downward, as simultaneously as possible on the two sides.
9. Turn the Allen wrench in the direction of the arrow until the front convertible top frame is locked to the windshield frame.
   The rear convertible top ends are automatically pressed onto the convertible top compartment lid and close tightly with tension.
10. If necessary, close the rear window again manually in the same way as above.

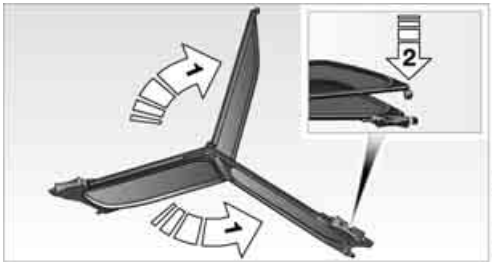
Wind deflector*

The wind deflector keeps the air movement in the passenger compartment to a minimum when the convertible top is open, thus enabling pleasant driving even at higher speeds.

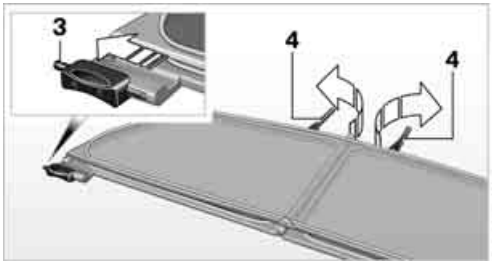
The wind deflector is stowed in a protective sleeve in the luggage compartment. Short instructions for use are also provided on the protective sleeve.

Before installing

1. Remove the wind deflector from the protective sleeve and fold it open, refer to arrows **1**.



2. Press the upper and lower section together until the locking device engages, refer to arrow **2**.
3. Push the securing pin **3** out until it engages.

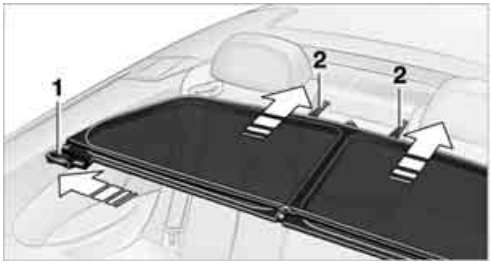


4. Unfold the rear mounts **4**.

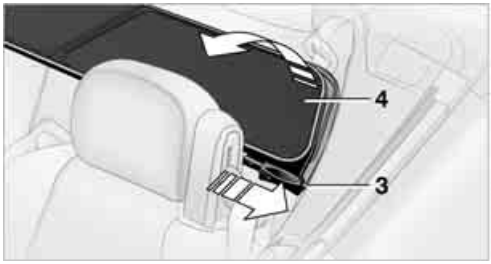
Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 602 735 - © 08/09 BMW AG

Installing

1. Insert the securing pin **1** of the wind deflector into the appropriate opening on the right side of the vehicle.



2. Guide the rear mounts **2** into the receptacles provided.
3. Push the securing pin **3** on the left side into the appropriate opening until it snaps into place.



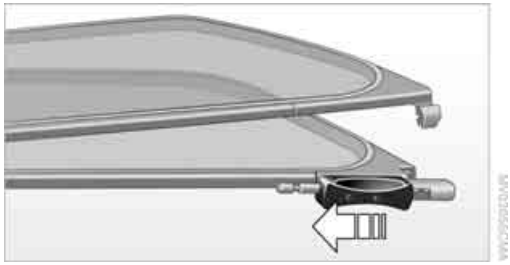
4. Fold up the upper half **4** of the wind deflector.

With wind deflector fitted: do not incline the front seat backrests too far backward if the seat is to be moved back to the end position. Otherwise, the wind deflector will be damaged.◀

Removing

The same as installing, but in reverse order.

Folding up



1. Push the handle of the securing pin on the wind deflector on the left side of the vehicle all the way back and release the locking mechanism.
2. Fold in the upper and lower section.

CarManuals2.com

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 602 735 - © 08/09 BMW AG

Adjusting

Sitting safely

The ideal sitting position can make a vital contribution to relaxed, fatigue-free driving. In the interaction with the safety belts, the head restraints and the airbags, the sitting position plays an important role in an accident. To ensure that the safety systems operate with optimal efficiency, we strongly urge you to observe the instructions contained in the following section.

For additional information on Transporting children safely, refer to page 52.

Airbags

Always maintain an adequate distance between yourself and the airbags. Always hold the steering wheel by its rim with hands at the 9 o'clock and 3 o'clock positions to minimize the risk of injuries to your hands and arms in the event of airbag deployment.
No one and nothing should come between the airbags and the seat occupant.
Do not use the cover of the front airbag on the front passenger side as a storage area. Make sure that the front passenger is sitting correctly and does not rest feet or legs on the instrument panel, otherwise leg injuries can occur if the knee and front airbags are triggered.
Make sure that occupants do not rest their head on the side or head airbags, otherwise injuries can occur if the airbags are triggered.◀

Even if you adhere to all the instructions, injuries resulting from contact with airbags cannot be fully excluded, depending on the circumstances. The ignition and inflation noise may provoke a mild hearing loss in extremely sensitive individuals. This effect is usually only temporary.

For airbag locations and additional information on airbags, refer to page 83.

Head restraints

A correctly adjusted head restraint reduces the risk of spinal injury in the event of an accident.

Adjust the head restraint so that its center is approx. at ear level. Otherwise there is increased danger of injury in the event of an accident.◀

Head restraints, refer to page 46.

Safety belt

Before every drive, make sure that safety belts are being worn at all of the occupied seats. Airbags complement the safety belt as an additional safety device, but they do not represent a substitute.

Your vehicle has four seats that are each equipped with a safety belt.

Never allow more than one person to wear a single safety belt. Never allow infants or small children to ride in a passenger's lap. Make sure that the belt lies low around the hips in the lap area and does not press on the abdomen. The safety belt must not lie across the neck, rub against sharp edges, be routed over solid or breakable objects or be pinched. Wear the safety belt without twisting, snugly across the lap and shoulders, as close to the body as possible. Otherwise the belt can slip over the hips in the lap area in a frontal impact and injure the abdomen. Avoid wearing clothing that prevents the belt from fitting properly and pull the belt in the upper body area periodically to readjust the tension, in order to avoid a reduction in the restraint of the safety belt.◀

Safety belts refer to page 48.

Seats

CarManuals2.com

Note before adjusting

Never attempt to adjust your seat while the vehicle is moving. The seat could respond with unexpected movement and the

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 602 735 - © 08/09 BMW AG

ensuing loss of vehicle control could lead to an accident.
Also on the passenger side, do not incline the backrest too far to the rear while the vehicle is being driven, otherwise there is a danger in the event of an accident of sliding under the safety belt, eliminating the protection normally provided by the belt.◀

Please follow the instructions on damage to safety belts provided on page 48 and the information on the active front head restraints on page 46.

⚠ Convertible: with the wind deflector fitted, do not incline the front seat backrests too far backward if the seat is to be moved back to the end position. Otherwise, the wind deflector will be damaged.◀

Adjusting seat

⚠ To ensure that the safety systems continue to provide optimized protection, please observe the adjustment instructions on page 43.◀

1 Angle
2 Longitudinal direction
3 Height
4 Backrest
5 Convertible: head restraints, refer to page 47

6 Coupe: Backrest width
7 Lumbar support

Lumbar support

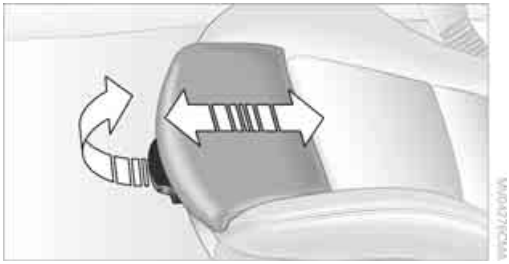
You can also adjust the contours of the backrest to obtain additional support in the lumbar region.

The upper hips and spinal column receive supplementary support to help you maintain a relaxed, upright sitting position.

▷ Increase or decrease curvature:
press front or rear section of switch.

▷ Move curvature up or down:
press upper or lowers section of switch.

Thigh support

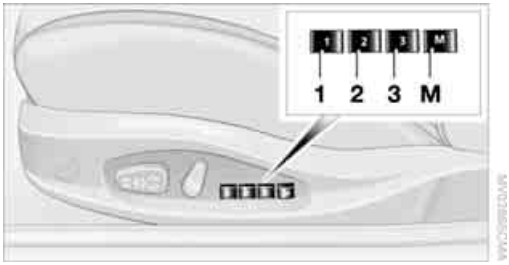


You can also adjust the thigh support manually: Pull the lever and adjust the thigh support in the longitudinal direction.

CarManuals2.com

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 602 735 - © 08/09 BMW AG

Seat, mirror and steering wheel memory



You can store and select three different adjustment settings for the driver's seat, exterior mirrors and steering wheel.

The adjustments of the lumbar support and the backrest width are not stored in the memory.

Storing

1. Switch on radio readiness or ignition, refer to page 55.
2. Set the desired seat, exterior mirror and steering wheel positions.
3. Press the M button:
   The LED in the button lights up.
4. Press the desired memory button **1**, **2** or **3**:
   The LED goes out.

Requesting

Do not request a position from the memory while the vehicle is moving. There is a risk of accident from unexpected movement of the seat or steering wheel.◀

Comfort mode

1. Open the driver's door after unlocking or switch on radio readiness, refer to page 55.
2. Briefly press the desired memory button **1**, **2** or **3**.

The system cancels the adjustment procedure when you briefly press one of the seat adjustment switches or one of the memory buttons.

The adjusting procedure for the steering wheel is interrupted if you briefly press the switch for the steering wheel adjustment in any direction, refer to page 50.

Safety feature

1. Close the driver's door and switch ignition on or off, refer to page 55.
2. Press the desired memory button **1**, **2** or **3** and maintain pressure until the adjustment process has been completed.

CarManuals2.com

If the M button was pressed inadvertently: press the button again; the LED goes out.

Requesting with remote control

The last positions of the driver's seat, external rearview mirrors, and steering wheel are stored for the remote key currently in use.

You can select* when the position is requested.

▷ Request when unlocking vehicle

▷ Request when opening driver's door. In the Convertible, only this function is used.

When using this feature, always make sure that the footwell behind the driver's seat is empty and unobstructed. Failure to do so could cause injury to persons or damage to objects behind the seat as a result of a rearward movement of the seat.◀

The system cancels the adjustment procedure when you briefly press one of the seat adjustment switches or one of the memory buttons.

Selecting automatic call-up

iDrive, for operating principle refer to page 16.

1. "Settings"
2. "Door locks"
3. "Last seat position auto."

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 602 735 - © 08/09 BMW AG

The function for automatically calling up the last seat position is switched on and is stored for the remote control currently in use.

Switching off automatic call-up

Deactivate "Last seat position auto.".

Front head restraints

A correctly adjusted head restraint reduces the risk of spinal injury in the event of an accident.

Adjust the head restraint so that its center is approximately at ear level. Otherwise there is increased danger of injury in the event of an accident.Only remove the head restraints if no one will be sitting on the seat in question. Reinstall the head restraints before transporting passengers, as otherwise the head restraint cannot provide its protective function.◀

Active front head restraints

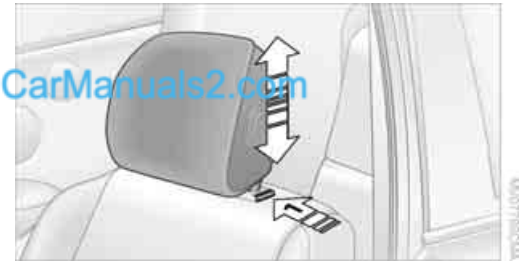
In the event of a rear-end collision of sufficient severity, the active head restraint reduces the distance to the head.

Do not use seat covers or head restraint covers that could impede the proper functioning of the active head restraint. Otherwise, there is no assurance that the active head restraint will perform its protective function and it is not possible to take advantage of its injury-reducing potential in the event of a rear-end collision.
Have the active head restraints reset after they are triggered in a rear-end collision. Only have this work carried out by a BMW center or a workshop that works according to BMW repair procedures with correspondingly trained personnel. Otherwise, this safety equipment will not function properly.◀

Please contact a BMW center if you wish to have the front head restraints removed and installed.◀

Coupe

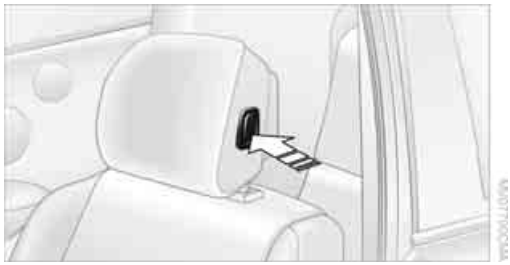
Height adjustment


CarManuals2.com

- To raise: pull the head restraint upward.
- To lower: slide the head restraint downward.

To reach the lowest position, press the button, refer to arrow **1**.◀

Front seats: adjusting distance to the back of the head



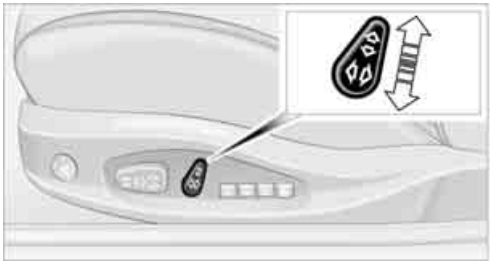
- Forward: pull up.
- Back: push the button and slide the headrest cushion toward the rear.

Do not place any objects behind the headrest cushion. Otherwise, you can impair the proper function of the head restraint.◀

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 602 735 - © 08/09 BMW AG

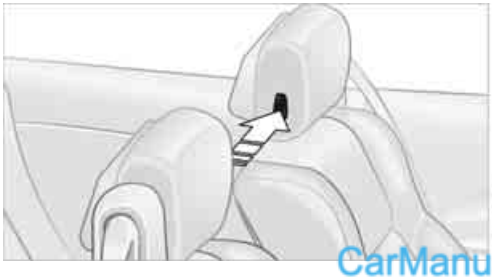
Convertible

Adjusting height



Move the switch up or down.

Front seats: adjusting distance to the back of the head



▷ Forward: pull up.

▷ Back: push the button and slide the headrest cushion toward the rear.

Do not place any objects behind the headrest cushion. Otherwise, you can impair the proper function of the head restraint.◀

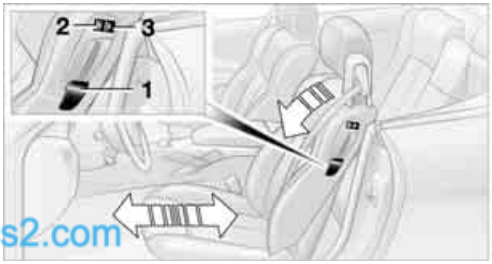
Entering rear

Before starting to drive, fold backrests back, otherwise there is the danger of accident due to an unexpected movement of the seat.◀

Coupe: releasing backrest

Pull the lever upward and fold the backrest forward.
The lever is designed so that the safety belt can be hooked onto it. This enables you to fasten the safety belt more conveniently.

Convertible: releasing backrest



CarManuals2.com

The belt system integrated in the seat makes it easier to get in back.

1. Pull lever **1** up and fold the backrest forward.
2. Press and hold button **2** until the seat has moved into the desired position.
3. After passengers have entered the rear, fold the backrest back and lock it in place.
4. Press and hold button **3** until the seat has moved back into its previous position. If you release button **3** before this, the seat stops in its current position.

You can lock the backrest in place when it is folded forward. This is useful, for example, when you get into the vehicle while it is parked on a hill. Press the backrest until it audibly locks into place. To fold it back, you do not need to use lever **1** to release it.◀

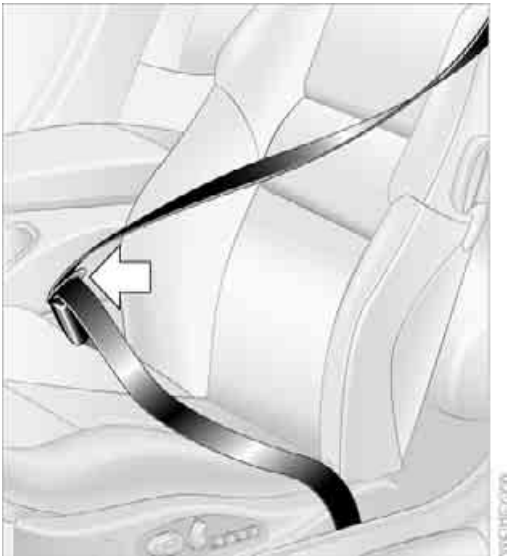
Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 602 735 - © 08/09 BMW AG

Lock backrest warning lamp: Lights up when the backrest is not locked. At the same time, a message is shown on the Control Display.

Safety belts

To ensure that the safety systems continue to provide optimized protection, please observe the adjustment instructions on page 43.◀

Before every drive, make sure that safety belts are being worn at all of the occupied seats. Airbags complement the safety belt as an additional safety device, but they do not represent a substitute.



Fastening

Make sure you hear the latch plate engage in the belt buckle.

Releasing

1. Grasp the belt firmly.
2. Press the red button in the buckle.
3. Guide the belt into its reel.

The shoulder strap's anchorage point will be in the correct position for adults of every build if the seat is correctly adjusted, refer to page 43.

Safety belt reminder for driver's seat and passenger seat*

CarManuals2.com

The indicator lamp lights up and a signal sounds. A message also appears on the Control Display. Please check whether safety belts are being worn correctly.

The safety belt reminder is operative at speeds above approx. 5 mph/8 km/h. It can also be activated if objects are placed on the passenger seat.

Damage to safety belts

When subjected to strain due to an accident or in the event of damage, replace the safety belts, the belt tensioners, and any child restraint systems and have the belt anchor points checked. Only have this work carried out at a BMW center or at a workshop that works according to BMW repair procedures with correspondingly trained personnel. Otherwise correct operation of this safety equipment is not guaranteed.◀

Heated seats

The temperature setting advances one step in its control sequence each time you press the button. The highest temperature is set when three LEDs are lit.

The temperature is reduced and if need be, the heating is switched off in order to reduce the load on the battery. The LEDs remain lit.

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 602 735 - © 08/09 BMW AG

To switch off:
Press the button longer.

Mirrors

Exterior mirrors

The mirror on the passenger's side is more curved than the driver's mirror. Objects reflected in the mirror are closer than they appear. Do not estimate the distance of following traffic based on what you see in the mirrors, otherwise there is an increased accident risk.◀

1 Adjusting

2 Switching to the other mirror or to the automatic curb monitor

3 Folding mirrors in and out*

Storing the mirror positions, refer to Seat, mirror and steering wheel memory on page 45.

Adjusting manually

You can also adjust the mirrors manually by pressing against the outer edges of their mirror glass.

Folding exterior mirrors in and out

Pressing button **3** allows you to fold mirrors in and out up to a speed of approx. 20 mph/ 30 km/h. This is advantageous, for example, in car washes, narrow streets or for bringing mirrors that have been manually folded in back into the correct position. Mirrors that were folded in are folded out automatically at a speed of approx. 25 mph/40 km/h.

Before going through a car wash, fold the mirrors in manually, or with button **3**, otherwise they could be damaged, depending on the width of the car wash system.◀

Automatic heating

Below a certain outdoor temperature, both exterior mirrors are heated whenever the engine is running or the ignition is switched on.

Tilting down passenger-side mirror – automatic curb monitor

Activating

1. Slide switch into the driver's side mirror position, arrow **1**.

2. Shift into reverse or move selector lever into position R.
   The mirror glass tilts downward somewhat on the passenger's side. This allows the driver to see the area immediately adjacent to the vehicle – such as a curb – when parking, etc.

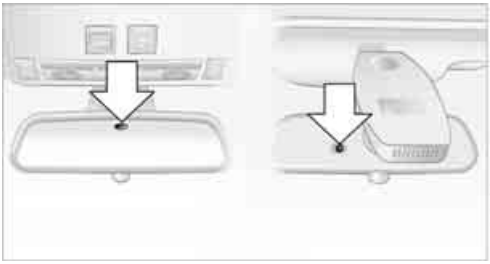
CarManuals2.com

Deactivating

Slide switch into the passenger side mirror position, arrow **2**.

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 602 735 - © 08/09 BMW AG

Interior and exterior mirrors, automatic dimming feature



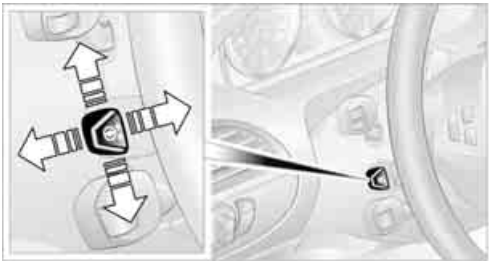
This feature is controlled by two photocells in the inside rearview mirror, one on the front and one on the back.

For trouble-free operation, keep the photocells clean and do not cover the area between the interior rearview mirror and the windshield. Do not attach stickers of any kind to the windshield in front of the mirror, either.

Steering wheel

Adjusting

Do not adjust the steering wheel while the vehicle is moving. There is a risk of accident as the result of unexpected movement.◀



The steering wheel can be adjusted in four directions.

Storing the steering-wheel position, refer to Seat, mirror and steering wheel memory, page 45.

Easy entry/exit

CarManuals2.com

To facilitate entry and exit, the steering wheel temporarily moves into the uppermost position.

Steering wheel heating*

Press the button.

When the steering wheel heater is operating, the LED in the button lights up.

MDrive

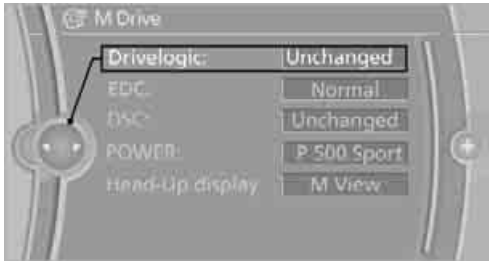
With MDrive you can configure several individual settings for your vehicle on the Control Display and activate them simultaneously with the button on the steering wheel.

Configuring settings

With the ignition switched on you can change the settings of MDrive on the Control Display.

iDrive, for operating principle refer to page 16.

1. "Settings"
2. "M Drive"



The functions contained in MDrive are displayed:

▷ "Drivelogic:"
Sequential Manual Transmission with

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 602 735 - © 08/09 BMW AG

Drivelogic: shifting modes and Drivelogic driving programs, refer to page 59

- "EDC:"
  Programs of the Electronic Damping Control, refer to page 79
- "DSC:"
  Dynamic Stability Control and M Dynamic Mode, refer to page 76
- "POWER:"
  Programs of the M Engine Dynamics Control, refer to page 60
- "Head-Up display"*
  Views of the Head-up Display, refer to page 86

You can reset all settings for MDrive to the default values:

3. Select the desired function.
4. Press the controller.
5. Turn the controller to select the desired setting.
6. Press the controller.

The setting is stored for the remote control currently in use.

Activating settings

Press the button on the steering wheel.

The indicator lamp in the instrument cluster lights up. The settings made on the Control Display for the functions contained in MDrive are active.

Pressing the button again deactivates MDrive.

If the indicator lamp flashes after the button was pressed, MDrive was unable to respond because the ABS Antilock Brake System or DSC Dynamic Stability Control are currently regulating driving stability. Press the button again when the indicator lamp no longer flashes.◀

Even with MDrive activated, you can change individual settings outside MDrive, e.g. with the buttons in the center console. To reactivate all settings made for MDrive on the Control Display: press the button twice.

CarManuals2.com

Transporting children safely

The right place for children

Do not leave children unattended in the vehicle, otherwise they could endanger themselves and other persons, e.g. by opening the doors.◀

Children always in the rear

Accident research shows that the safest place for children is on the rear seat.

Children younger than 13 years of age or with a height under 5 ft/150 cm may only be transported in the rear in child restraint systems which correspond to the age, weight and height of the child. Otherwise there is an increased danger of injury in an accident.◀

Children 13 years of age or older must wear a safety belt as soon as a suitable child restraint system can no longer be used due to their age, size and weight.

Exception for front passenger seat

Should it be necessary to use a child restraint system on the front passenger seat, the front and side airbags for the front passenger must be deactivated. Otherwise, a child traveling on that seat will face a significant risk of injury if the airbags are deployed, even with a child restraint system. Before installing a child restraint system, move the front passenger seat as far back and up as possible to obtain the best possible position for the belt. Do not change the seat position after this.◀

For more information on automatic deactivation of the front passenger airbags, refer to page 84.

Installing child restraint systems

Follow child restraint system manufacturer's instructions for the selection, installation and use of child restraint systems. Otherwise, the degree of protection they offer may be reduced.◀

On front passenger seat

After mounting a child restraint system on the front passenger seat, make sure that the front and side airbags on the front passenger side are deactivated, as otherwise there is an increased risk of injury if the airbags are triggered.◀

Seat position

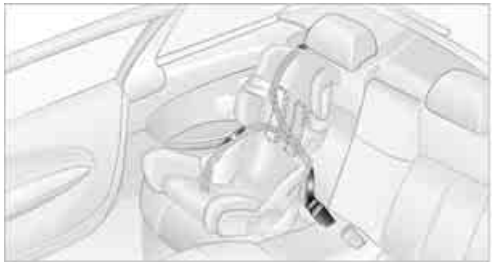
Before installing a child restraint system, move the front passenger seat as far back and up as possible to obtain the best possible position for the belt. Do not change the seat position after this.

Backrest width

Before mounting a child restraint system on the front passenger seat, the backrest width adjustment must be completely open.◀

1. Adjust the backrest width to the fully open position, refer to page 44.
2. Install child seat.

Child seat security



All rear safety belts and the safety belt for the front passenger can be locked against pulling out to secure child restraint systems.

CarManuals2.com

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 602 735 - © 08/09 BMW AG

Locking safety belt

1. Secure the child restraint system with the belt.
2. Pull out the belt webbing completely.
3. Allow the belt webbing to retract and pull taut against the child restraint system. The safety belt is locked.

CarManuals2.com

Unlocking safety belt

1. Open the belt buckle.
2. Remove the child restraint system.
3. Allow the belt webbing to retract completely.

LATCH child restraint fixing system

LATCH: Lower Anchor and Tethers for Children.

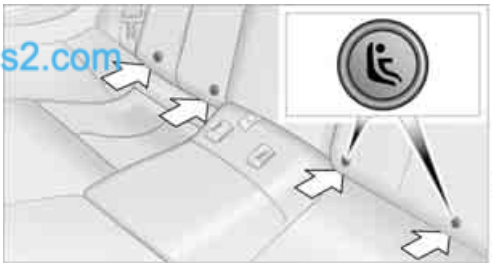
Follow the system manufacturer's instructions on installation and use of LATCH child restraint systems in order not to impair their protective function.◀

Anchor points for LATCH mounts

Before attaching the LATCH child seat, pull the belt away from the region of the child restraint fixing system.

Make sure that both of the lower LATCH mounts have properly clicked into place and that the child restraint system is resting snugly against the backrest. Otherwise, the protective action may be impeded.◀

Rear seats



The mounting points for the LATCH anchors are located at the positions indicated by arrows in the gap between the seat and the backrest.

Upper LATCH retaining strap

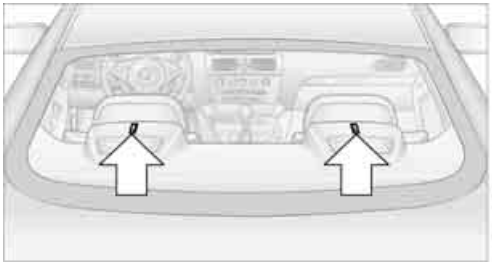
Convertible

For Canadian Customers Only

The following statement is required by Transport Canada:
This vehicle is not equipped with user-ready tether anchorages. As such neither a child restraint system, nor a booster cushion, requiring the use of a tether strap can be properly secured in the vehicle.

Coupe

Only use the top tether-strap mounting points to secure child restraint systems, otherwise the mounting points could be damaged.◀

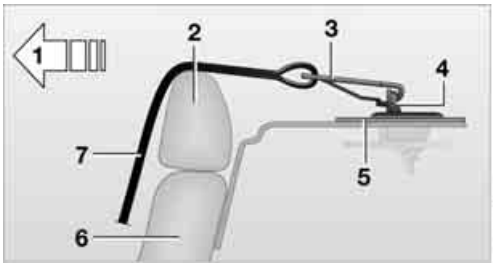


There are two additional mounting points for child restraint systems with a tether strap, refer to arrows.

Placement of tether strap

Make sure that the tether strap is not routed over sharp edges and does not twist on its way to the upper mounting point; otherwise, the belt may not properly secure the child restraint system in the event of an accident.◀

CarManuals2.com



1 Direction of travel

2 Head restraints

3 Tether strap hook

4 Mounting point

5 Rear window shelf

6 Backrest

7 Tether strap of child restraint system

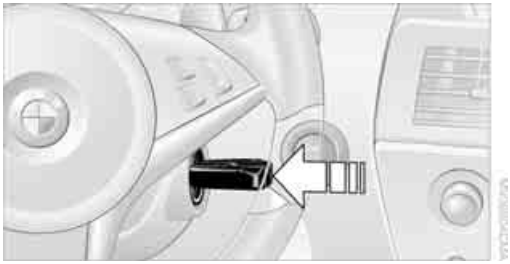
Before usage, fold the the head restraint* and if necessary the mounting points into their raised position.

1. Slide the head restraint into the bottom position.
2. Guide the tether strap over the head restraint.
3. Attach the tether strap hook to the mounting point.

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 602 735 - © 08/09 BMW AG

Ignition lock

Inserting remote control into ignition lock



Insert the remote control as far as possible into the ignition lock.

Radio readiness switches on.
Some electronic systems/consumers are ready for operation.

Comfort Access*

With Comfort Access, only insert the remote control into the ignition lock in exceptional cases, refer to page 34.

Removing remote control from ignition lock

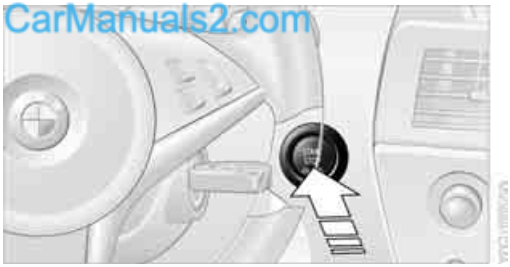
Do not pull the remote control out of the ignition lock using force, as otherwise damage may result.◀

Before removing the remote control, first press it in as far as possible to release the locking device.

The ignition is switched off if it was still switched on.

Start/Stop button

CarManuals2.com



Pressing the Start/Stop button switches the radio readiness or the ignition on and off.

Manual transmission: the engine starts when you depress the clutch while pressing the Start/Stop button.
Sequential Manual Transmission: the engine starts when you press the Start/Stop button with the brake depressed and the selector lever in position P or N.◀

Radio readiness

Some electronic systems/consumers are ready for operation. The last information of the computer selected is displayed in the instrument cluster.

Radio readiness is switched off:

- when the remote control is removed from the ignition lock
- with Comfort Access* by touching the surface on the door handle, refer to Locking on page 35

Ignition on

All electronic systems/consumers are ready for operation. The odometer and the trip odometer are displayed in the instrument cluster, refer to page 65.

Please switch off the ignition and the electronic systems/consumers which are not required when the engine is not running to save the battery.◀

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 602 735 - © 08/09 BMW AG

Radio readiness and ignition switched off

All indicator and warning lamps in the instrument cluster go out.

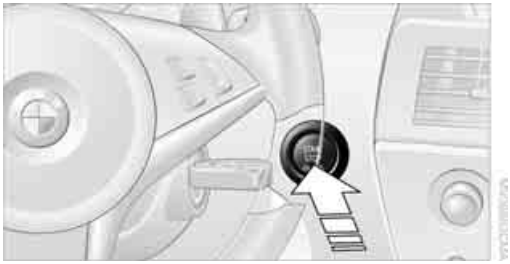
Starting engine

CarManuals2.com

Do not run the engine in enclosed areas, otherwise the inhalation of toxic exhaust gases can cause loss of consciousness and death. The exhaust gases contain carbon monoxide, an odorless and colorless, but highly toxic gas.
Never leave an unattended vehicle with the engine running, as such a vehicle represents a potential safety hazard.
Before leaving the vehicle with the engine running, shift into neutral* or move the selector lever into position N and firmly apply the parking brake, otherwise the vehicle can begin to roll.◀

Avoid frequent starting in quick succession or repeated starting attempts in which the engine does not start. Otherwise, the fuel is not burned or inadequately burned and there is a danger of overheating and damaging the catalytic converter.◀

Do not allow the engine to warm up by leaving it running while the vehicle remains stationary. Instead, begin to drive at a moderate engine speed.



Manual transmission*

Remote control in ignition lock or with Comfort Access in vehicle, refer to page 34.

1. Depress brake pedal.
2. Depress the clutch pedal and shift into idling position.
3. Press the Start/Stop button.

Sequential Manual Transmission with Drivelogic

Remote control in ignition lock or with Comfort Access in vehicle, refer to page 34.

1. Depress brake pedal.
2. Place selector lever in position N.
3. Press the Start/Stop button.

If the engine does not start, shift back to the last selector lever position selected, refer to the instrument cluster display or the selector lever. Then select position N.
You cannot start off with the hood open.
When the engine is cold, the exhaust system has a slightly metallic undertone due to the system design.◀

After every engine start, as soon as the selector lever is pushed to the right into the drive position ● and the brake pedal is pressed, the Sequential mode is activated.

Switching engine off

When leaving the vehicle, always take the remote control with you.
When parking, firmly apply the parking brake, as otherwise the vehicle could roll.◀

Manual transmission*

1. Press the Start/Stop button with the vehicle stopped.
2. Shift into first gear or reverse.
3. Firmly apply the parking brake.
4. Remove the remote control from the ignition lock, refer to page 55.

Sequential Manual Transmission with Drivelogic

1. Firmly apply the parking brake.
2. Shift into a driving position.

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 602 735 - © 08/09 BMW AG

3. Press the Start/Stop button.
   If N is engaged when switching off the engine, this will be pointed out to you visually and acoustically.
4. Remove the remote control from the ignition lock, refer to page 55.

CarManuals2.com

Parking brake

The parking brake is primarily intended to prevent the vehicle from rolling while parked; it brakes the rear wheels.

Indicator lamp

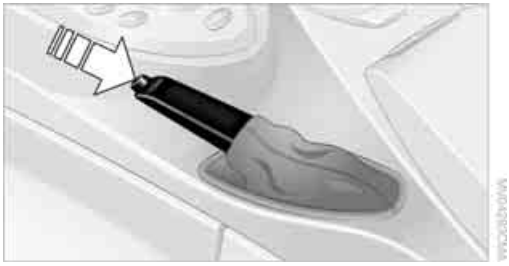
The indicator lamp lights up, and a signal sounds when you drive away. The parking brake is applied.

Indicator lamp for Canadian models.

Applying

The lever locks in position automatically.

Releasing



Pull slightly upwards, press the button and lower the lever.

If exceptional circumstances should make it necessary to apply the parking brake while the vehicle is in motion, do not pull it too firmly. In doing so, continuously press the button of the parking brake lever. Otherwise, too firm an application of the parking brake can lock up the rear wheels and cause the rear of the vehicle to swerve.◀

To prevent corrosion and one-sided braking action, occasionally engage the parking brake lightly when the vehicle is slowly coming to a stop if the traffic conditions are suitable. The brake lamps do not light up when the parking brake is applied.◀

Manual transmission*

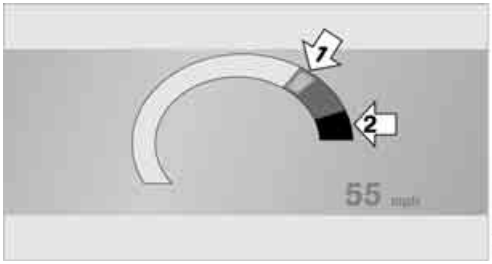
While shifting in the 5th/6th gear lane, press the gearshift lever toward the right, otherwise accidental shifting into the 3rd or 4th gear could result in engine damage.◀

When shifting into 1st gear, you may feel a slight jolt. This part of normal operation and no reason for concern.

Reverse gear

Select only when the vehicle is stationary. When pressing the gearshift lever to the left, overcome some resistance.

Shift lights



To achieve the best vehicle acceleration with a sporty driving style, shift lights in the Head-up Display* indicate the optimum shifting point briefly before reaching the maximum rpm. Refer to Shift lights, page 60.

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 602 735 - © 08/09 BMW AG

Sequential Manual Transmission with Drivelogic

The concept

The SMG Sequential Manual Transmission with Drivelogic is an automated manual transmission in which an electrohydraulic system handles the clutching and gear changes.

The Sequential Manual Transmission is operated with the selector lever and two shift paddles on the steering wheel.

It offers you the following functions:

- Optional manual or automatic operation: Sequential mode or Drive mode
- Selection option between different driving programs, Drivelogic, refer to page 59
- Upshift display, shift lights, refer to page 60
- Automatic downshifting and prevention of incorrect shifting even in Sequential operation
- Automatic double clutching

Selector lever positions

- R: Reverse gear
- N: Neutral
- ●: Drive position:
  - +: manual upshifting
  - –: manual downshifting
  - D/S: switch between Drive mode and Sequential mode

Shiftlock

Press the brake pedal before shifting out of N; the shift command will not be executed unless the brake is applied.

R Reverse

Select only when the vehicle is stationary.

N Idle

Always select before starting engine.

If the driving situation requires, e.g. when downshifting on a slippery road surface, the Sequential Manual Transmission automatically clutches and then declutches again, i.e. it is not necessary to manually shift into idling mode.

▷ The system shifts into N when you open the driver's door or the hood with the engine running and do not operate pedals, shift paddles or the selector lever. To begin driving after closing the driver's door or the hood, first shift the selector lever into the N position, and then shift into drive.◀

S Sequential mode

You can shift up and down using the shift paddles or the selector lever. You do not need to remove your foot from the accelerator to do so.

Shifting from Sequential mode to Drive mode: press selector lever to the right toward D/S.

CarManuals2.com

To switch back into the Sequential mode: shift using the shift paddles or the selector lever or press selector lever to the right toward D/S again.

Starting off is also possible on a level road surface in second gear, e.g. in case of ice.

In the following situations, the Sequential Manual Transmission thinks for you:

- Upshifts and downshifts are executed only when they will result in a feasible combination of engine and vehicle speed; thus, for example, a downshift that would cause the engine to overrev will not be executed by the system.
- When the vehicle is stationary, the transmission automatically downshifts into first gear.
- Shortly before dropping below a gear-dependent minimum speed, the transmission downshifts automatically even without your intervention.

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 602 735 - © 08/09 BMW AG

D Drive mode

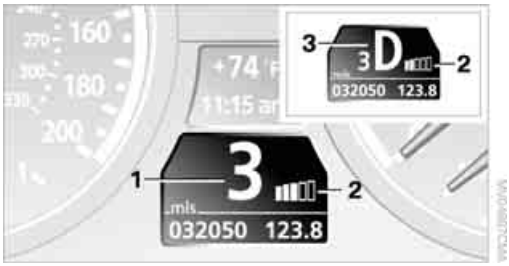
In the Drive mode, all forward gears are shifted automatically.

Shifting from Sequential mode to Drive mode: shift using the shift paddles or the selector lever, or press the selector level to the right in the D/S direction.

Shifting back to Drive mode: press the selector lever to the right in the D/S direction again.

Kickdown: for rapid acceleration, e.g. when passing, press the accelerator pedal as far down as it will go. You achieve maximum acceleration.

Displays in instrument cluster



1 Gear 1 to 7, R, N engaged

2 Selected driving program, matches the number of illuminated fields, refer to Drivelogic on page 59

3 In drive mode, the currently selected gear followed by a D is displayed.

▷ The gear display flashes when you open the driver's door with the engine running. If you do not subsequently operate the pedals, shift paddles, or selector lever, then the system shifts into N.◀

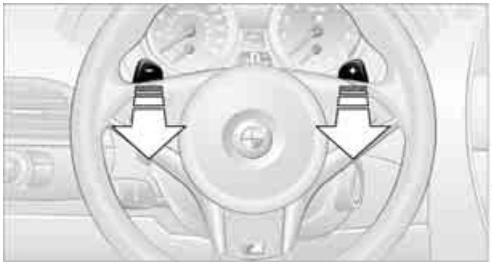
Gear changes

Using selector lever

▷ To upshift, pull the selector lever back.

▷ To downshift, push the selector lever forward.

Using shift paddles on steering wheel



▷ To upshift, briefly pull the right shift paddle +.

▷ To downshift, briefly pull the left shift paddle –.

Drivelogic

With Drivelogic various driving programs are available to you.

Each time you change between the Sequential mode and the Drive mode, the driving program last selected in the respective mode is active. Exception: after the first change from the Sequential to the Drive mode, driving program 3 is active.

CarManuals2.com

In Drive mode

There are five different driving programs, ranging from relaxed 1 to sporty/highly dynamic 5.

In Sequential mode

You can choose from six driving programs from balanced/dynamic 1 to sporty/purist 6.

Program 6 is only available when the DSC Dynamic Stability Control is deactivated, refer to page 76. If DSC is activated, then the system switches from program 6 to program 5.

▷ To maintain vehicle stability, always activate DSC whenever possible.◀

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 602 735 - © 08/09 BMW AG

Selecting driving program with button in center console

Press the button repeatedly until the desired driving program is displayed in the instrument cluster, refer to page 59.

Selecting driving program via button on steering wheel

You can also activate your preferred driving program with the button on the steering wheel, refer to MDrive on page 50.

With the ignition switched on you can change the settings of MDrive on the Control Display.

iDrive, for operating principle refer to page 16.

1. "Settings"
2. "M Drive"
3. Select "Drivelogic:" and press the controller. The first setting is selected.

CarManuals2.com

4. Turn controller to set Drive mode or Sequential mode.
5. Press controller to select driving programs.
6. Turn controller to set driving program.
7. Press the controller.

Shift lights

To achieve the best vehicle acceleration with a sporty driving style in the Sequential mode, shift lights in the Head-up Display* indicate the optimum shifting point briefly before reaching the maximum rpm.

1. Activate the Head-up Display, refer to page 86
2. Select the "M View" display on the Head-up Display.

The current engine speed is highlighted on the tachometer.

3. When approaching the maximum rpm, yellow illuminated fields **1** of the tachometer consecutively indicate the approaching upshift point.
4. At the very latest, shift when the field **2** lights up in red.

When the permissible maximum rpm is reached, the entire tachometer begins to flash. When the maximum rpm is exceeded, the fuel supply is cut off to protect the engine. Always avoid engine speeds in this range.

M Engine Dynamic Control

With M Engine Dynamic Control you can influence how sporty the reaction of your vehicle to accelerator pedal movements is to be. Three programs are available for engine control.

"P 400" program

In the "P 400" program, the engine reacts gently to the movement of the accelerator pedal. This is, for example, ideal for city driving or driving on snow. In the process, the fuel consump-

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 602 735 - © 08/09 BMW AG

tion is minimal and the engine output is reduced.

"P 500" program

The "P 500" program provides maximum performance and more spontaneous reaction of the engine to accelerator pedal movements.

CarManuals2.com

"P 500 Sport" program

In the "P 500 Sport" program, the engine responds to accelerator pedal movements with a high degree of spontaneity and uncompromising sportiness while exhibiting maximum performance.

Selecting program

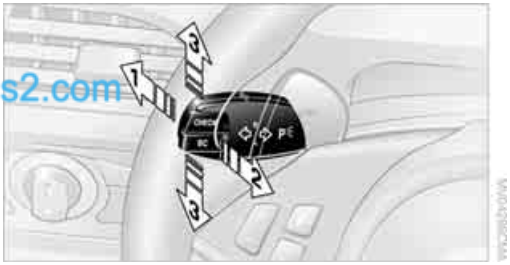
The "P 400" program is activated after each engine start.

Press the POWER button to activate the "P 500" program. Pressing the POWER button repeatedly switches between the programs "P 400" and "P 500".

You can also activate your preferred program with the button on the steering wheel, refer to MDrive on page 50. You can activate the "P 500 Sport" program only with MDrive.

For the programs "P 500" and "P 500 Sport", the LED in the POWER button lights up.

Turn signals/ headlamp flasher



1 High beams

2 Headlamp flasher

3 Turn signals

Using turn signals

Press the lever beyond the resistance point.

To turn off manually, press the lever to the resistance point.

Atypically rapid flashing of the indicator lamp indicates the failure of a turn signal lamp.◀

Signaling briefly

Press lever to resistance point and hold for as long as you wish to signal.

Triple turn signal activation

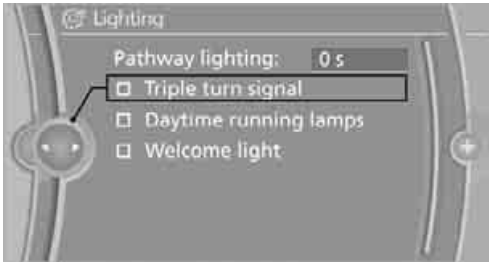
Press the lever to the resistance point; the turn signal flashes three times.

You can activate or deactivate this function.

iDrive, for operating principle refer to page 16.

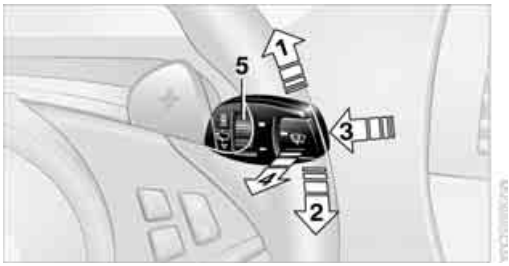
1. "Settings"
2. "Lighting"
3. "Triple turn signal"

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 602 735 - © 08/09 BMW AG



4. Triple turn signal activation is activated and is stored for the remote control currently in use.

Wiper system



1 Switching on wipers
2 Switching off wipers or brief wipe
3 Activating/deactivating rain sensor
4 Cleaning windshield and headlamps
5 Adjusting rain sensor sensitivity level

Switching on wipers

Pull the lever upward, arrow **1**.

The lever automatically returns to its initial position when released.

Normal wiper speed

Press once.
The system reverts to operation in the intermittent mode when the vehicle is stationary.

Fast wiper speed

CarManuals2.com

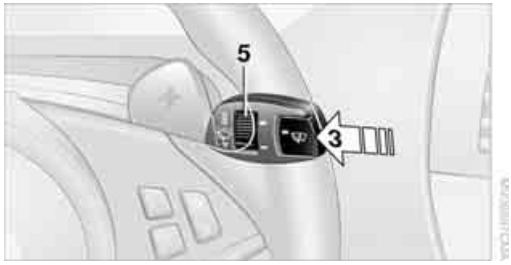
Press twice or press beyond the resistance point.

The system reverts to normal speed when the vehicle is stationary.

Rain sensor

The wiper operation is controlled automatically as a function of the rain intensity. The rain sensor is located on the windshield, directly in front of the interior rearview mirror.

Activating rain sensor



Press the button, arrow **3**. The LED in the button lights up.

Adjusting rain sensor sensitivity level

Turn the thumbwheel **5**.

Deactivating rain sensor

Press the button again, arrow **3**. The LED goes out.

Deactivate the rain sensor when passing through an automatic car wash. Failure to do so could result in damage caused by undesired wiper activation.◀

Cleaning windshield and headlamps

Pull the lever, arrow **4**.

The system sprays washer fluid against the windshield and activates the wipers for a brief period.

When the vehicle lighting is switched on, the headlamps are simultaneously washed at appropriate intervals.

Do not use the washing mechanisms if there is any danger that the fluid will freeze on the windshield. If you do so, your vision could be obscured. To avoid freezing, use a washer fluid antifreeze, refer to Washer

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 602 735 - © 08/09 BMW AG

fluid. Do not use washing mechanisms when the washer fluid reservoir is empty, otherwise you will damage the washer pump.◀

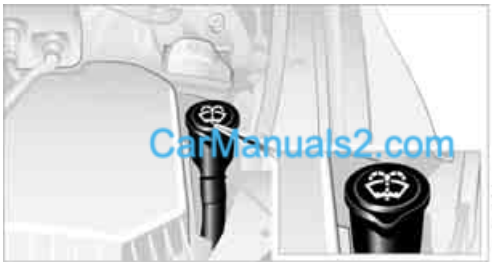
Windshield washer nozzles

The windshield washer nozzles are heated when the engine is running or the ignition is switched on.

Washer fluid

Washer fluid antifreeze is flammable. For this reason, keep it away from ignition sources and store only in the closed original container out of reach of children. Otherwise, there is the danger of bodily injury. Always observe the instructions for use provided on the containers.◀

Filler neck for washer fluid


CarManuals2.com

All washer nozzles are supplied from one reservoir.

Fill with water and – if required – with a washer antifreeze, according to manufacturer's recommendations.

In order to maintain the mixture ratio, mix the washer fluid before filling.◀

Capacity

Capacity approx. 5.3 US quarts/5 liters.

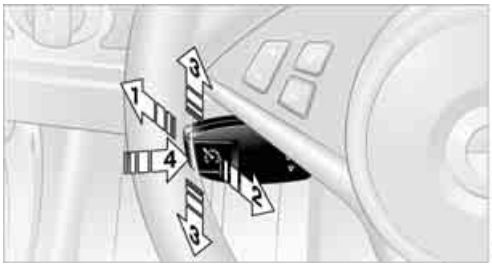
Cruise control

The concept

The cruise control is available for use at speeds of approx. 20 mph/30 km/h and higher. The vehicle stores and maintains the speed that you set using the lever mounted on the steering column. If the engine braking effect is insufficient on a downhill grade, the set speed may be exceeded. Speed can drop on uphill grades if the engine output is insufficient.

Do not use the cruise control under driving conditions that do not permit a constant speed, e.g. when driving on winding roads, in heavy traffic or in poor road conditions such as snow, rain, ice, loose road surface, and poor visibility. Otherwise you could lose control of the vehicle and cause an accident.◀

One lever for all functions



1 Maintaining, storing and increasing speed

2 Maintaining speed, storing speed, and decelerating

3 Interrupting and deactivating system

4 Resuming stored speed

Maintaining, storing and increasing speed

Press lever to resistance point, arrow **1**:
The speed currently being driven is maintained and stored. The display **1** in the speedometer, see below, indicates this regulated speed. Every time you press the lever, the vehicle's speed increases by roughly 1 mph/1 km/h.

Press lever to resistance point for a longer time:
The vehicle accelerates without pressure on the accelerator pedal. The system maintains and stores your current speed as soon as you release the lever.

Press the lever beyond the resistance point:
The speed is increased to the next fives posi-

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 602 735 - © 08/09 BMW AG

tion in the mph display or the next tens position in the km/h display.

Press and hold the lever beyond the resistance point:
The vehicle accelerates more quickly.

CarManuals2.com

Maintaining speed, storing speed, and decelerating

Pull the lever, arrow **2**:
Functions are the same as **1**; the speed is reduced.

Interrupting system

Press the lever up or down, arrow **3**.

The display **1** in the speedometer changes color.

In addition, the system is interrupted:

- when you apply the brakes, even with the parking brake
- when you clutch
- when you shift using the shift paddles or the selector lever
- when the DSC comes on

Resuming stored speed

Press button **4**:
The stored speed is resumed and maintained.

Deactivating system

- Press the lever up or down twice, arrow **3**
- Switch off the ignition

The speed stored in the memory is deleted.

Displays in the instrument cluster

1 Stored speed

2 Selected speed is displayed briefly

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 602 735 - © 08/09 BMW AG

Controls Overview

Odometer, outside temperature display, clock

1 Time, outside temperature, refer to Computer on page 66

2 Odometer and trip odometer

3 Press button:

- ▷ with ignition switched on, trip odometer is reset
- ▷ with ignition switched off, odometer is briefly displayed

Tachometer

The advance warning field, arrow **1**, and the red warning field, arrow **2**, change depending on the engine temperature. As the engine temperature rises, the permissible engine speed also increases. Avoid allowing the engine speed to rise as far as the orange warning field whenever possible.

Be sure to avoid engine speeds in the red warning field. At high revs in this range, the flow of fuel is interrupted to protect the engine.

Coolant temperature

Should the coolant, and with it the engine become too hot, a warning lamp lights up. In addition, a message appears on the Control Display.

Checking coolant level, refer to page 196.

CarManuals2.com

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 602 735 - © 08/09 BMW AG

Engine oil temperature*

The general operating temperature lies between 175 °F /80 °C and 250 °F /120 °C. Do not exceed a value of approx. 265 °F /130 °C.

If the engine oil temperature is too high, the permissible engine speed, and with it the available engine output is reduced.

Fuel gauge

Fuel tank capacity: approx. 18.5 US gal/ 70 liters. You will find information on refueling on page 184.

If the tilt of the vehicle varies for a longer period, when you are driving in mountainous areas, for example, the indicator may fluctuate slightly.

Reserve

After the reserve quantity has been reached, a message briefly appears on the Control Display; the remaining range is shown in the computer. Below a range of approx. 30 miles/50 km, the message remains on the Control Display.

Refuel as soon as possible once your cruising range falls below 30 miles/ 50 km, otherwise engine functions are not ensured and damage can occur.◀

Computer

Displays in instrument cluster

Press the button on the turn signal lever.

The following information is displayed in the specified order:

- ▷ Time and outside temperature
- ▷ Cruising range
- ▷ Average fuel consumption
- ▷ Oil level, refer to Checking engine oil level on page 193

Manual transmission:
The cruising range, average fuel consumption and oil level are shown in the lower display in place of the gear indicator.
It is possible to change between the time and data display by pressing the CHECK button in the turn signal lever.◀

CarManuals2.com

Time

To set the time, refer to page 69.

Outside temperature warning

If the display drops to +37 °F /+3 °C, a signal sounds and a warning lamp lights up. A message appears on the Control Display. There is an increased danger of ice.

Even at temperatures above +37 °F / +3 °C ice can form. Therefore, drive carefully, e.g. on bridges and sections of road in the shade, otherwise there is an increased accident risk.◀

You can set the unit of measure °F or °C on the Control Display, refer to Units of measure on page 68.

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 602 735 - © 08/09 BMW AG

Cruising range

Displays the estimated cruising range available with the remaining fuel. The range is projected based on the driving style over the last 20 miles/ 30 km.

Refuel as soon as possible once your cruising range falls below 30 miles/ 50 km, otherwise engine functions are not ensured and damage can occur.◀

CarManuals2.com

Average fuel consumption

The average fuel consumption is calculated for the time during which the engine is running.

To reset average fuel consumption: press BC button on turn signal lever for approx. 2 seconds.

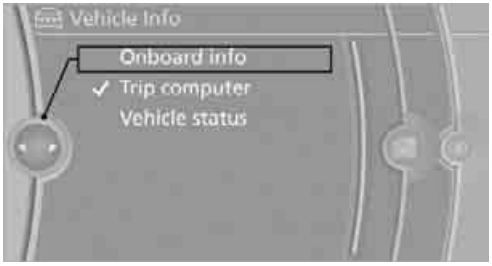
For different routes

You can display the average speed and average fuel consumption for two different routes on the Control Display, refer to the following and to Trip computer.

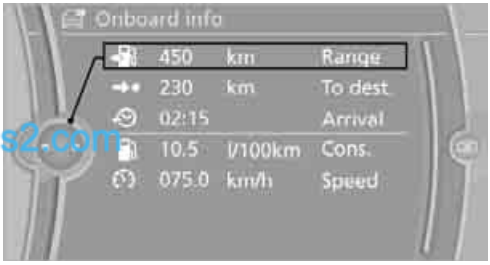
Displays on the Control Display

You can also call up the computer via iDrive, for operating principle refer to page 16.

1. "Vehicle Info"
2. "Onboard info" or "Trip computer"



Displays on the "Onboard info":



- ▷ Cruising range
- ▷ Distance from destination
- ▷ Estimated time of arrival, provided that a destination was entered in the navigation system*, refer to page 117.

Displays on the "Trip computer":

- ▷ Departure time
- ▷ Trip duration
- ▷ Trip distance

Both displays show:

- ▷ The average speed and
- ▷ the average fuel consumption.

Resetting the fuel consumption and speed

You can reset the values for the average speed and average fuel consumption:

1. Select the respective menu item and press the controller.
2. To confirm your selection, press the controller again.

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 602 735 - © 08/09 BMW AG

Resetting the Trip computer

1. "Vehicle Info"
2. "Trip computer"
3. "Reset"
   All values are reset.

CarManuals2.com

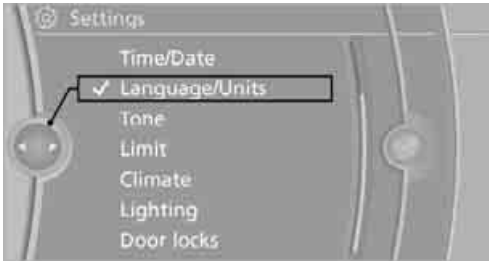
Units of measure

Setting the units of measure

You can change the units of measure for consumption, distances, temperature and pressure.

iDrive, for operating principle refer to page 16.

1. "Settings"
2. "Language/Units"



3. Select the desired menu item.
4. Select the desired unit.

The settings are stored for the remote key currently in use.

Service requirements

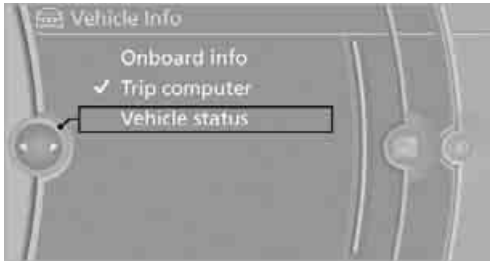
The remaining driving distance and the date for the next maintenance are displayed briefly with the ignition switched on.

Your BMW Service Advisor can determine your vehicle's current service requirements by reading out the data stored in the remote control.◀

Additional information

You can select a display of more detailed information on the maintenance scope on the Control Display. For operating principle refer to page 16.

1. "Vehicle Info"
2. "Vehicle status"



3. "Service required"

Required maintenance procedures and legally mandated inspections are displayed.

You can request more detailed information on every entry.

Select the entry and press the controller.

To exit from the menu:
Move the controller to the left.

Symbols

OK No service is currently required.

The deadline for service or an official inspection is approaching. Please arrange a service appointment.

The service deadline has already passed.

Entering deadlines for legally required inspections*

Make sure the date on the Control Display is set correctly, refer to page 70; otherwise, the effectiveness of CBS Condition Based Service is not ensured.

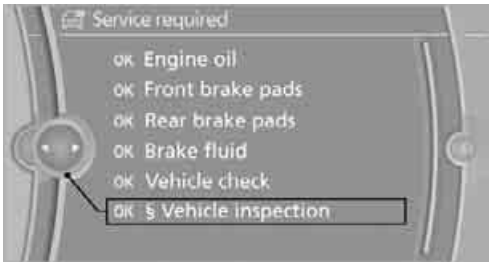
Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 602 735 - © 08/09 BMW AG

iDrive, for operating principle refer to page 16.

1. "Vehicle Info"
2. "Vehicle status"
3. "Service required"

CarManuals2.com

4. "§ Vehicle inspection"



5. Open the menu for entering the deadline.
6. "Date:"
7. Turn the controller until the desired month is displayed, and then press the controller.
8. Set the year in the same manner.

The date is stored.

To exit the menu:
Move the controller to the left.

More information on the BMW Maintenance System can be found on page 197.

Automatic Service Request*

Data regarding the maintenance status or legally mandated inspections of the vehicle are automatically transmitted to your BMW center prior to a service due date.

You can check when your BMW center was notified.

iDrive, for operating principle refer to page 16.

1. "Vehicle Info"
2. "Vehicle status"

3. "Options"
4. "Last Service Request"

Clock

The settings are stored for the remote control currently in use, refer also to Personal Profile on page 26.

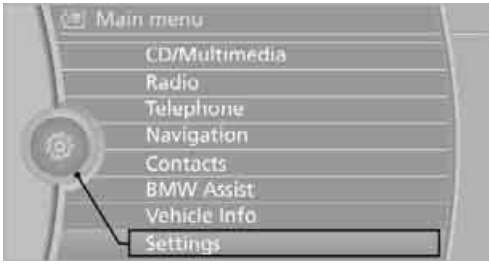
Setting the time

To set the 12h/24h mode, refer to Setting the time format below.

iDrive, for operating principle refer to page 16.

1. Press the **MENU** button.
   The main menu is displayed.

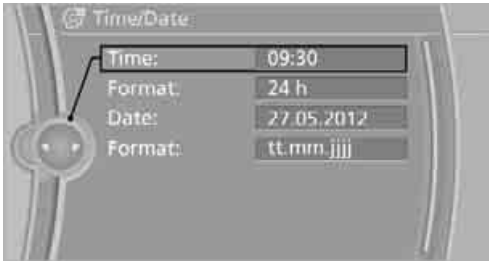
2. "Settings"



Setting the time

iDrive, for operating principle refer to page 16.

1. "Settings"
2. "Time/Date"



3. "Time:"
4. Turn the controller until the desired hours are displayed, and then press the controller.
5. Turn the controller until the desired minutes are displayed, and then press the controller.

The time is stored.

Setting the time format

iDrive, for operating principle refer to page 16.

1. "Settings"
2. "Time/Date"
3. "Format:"
4. Select the desired format and press the controller.

The time format is stored.

Date

The settings are stored for the remote control currently in use, refer also to Personal Profile on page 26.

Setting date

To set the dd/mm or mm/dd date format, refer to Setting the date format below.

iDrive, for operating principle refer to page 16.

1. "Settings"
2. "Time/Date"
3. "Date:"
4. Turn the controller until the desired day is displayed, and then press the controller.
5. Create the necessary settings for the month and year.

The date is stored.

Setting the date format

iDrive, for operating principle refer to page 16.

1. "Settings"
2. "Time/Date"
3. "Format:"

CarManuals2.com

4. Select the desired format.

The date format is stored.

Check Control

The concept

The Check Control monitors functions in the vehicle and issues a message if there is a malfunction in the monitored systems. This kind of Check Control message consists of indicator

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 602 735 - © 08/09 BMW AG

and warning lamps in the instrument cluster, and if necessary an acoustic signal and text messages at the bottom of the Control Display.

Indicator and warning lamps

The indicator and warning lamps can light up in different combinations and colors.

⚠ This symbol means that a Check Control message has been generated. The symbol continues to be visible even when the Check Control message disappears after a short time. The warning lamps and text messages are stored and can be displayed later, also refer to page 72.

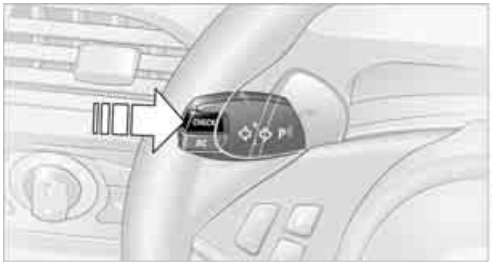
Explanatory text messages

For most Check Control messages, you can view more information later, e.g. regarding the cause of a malfunction and how to respond; refer to the information provided below.

In urgent cases, this information will be shown as soon as the corresponding lamp lights up.

Exit the displayed information:
Move the controller to the left.

Hiding Check Control messages



Press the CHECK button in the turn signal lever.

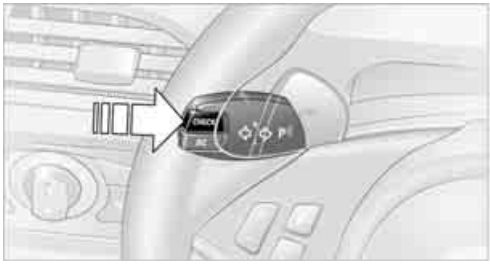
Some Check Control messages are displayed until the malfunctions have been rectified. They cannot be hidden. If a number of malfunctions occur simultaneously, they are displayed in succession.

Other messages are hidden after approx. 20 seconds, but remain stored.

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 602 735 - © 08/09 BMW AG

Displaying stored Check Control messages

1. Press the button longer:
   The first stored message is displayed.



2. Press the button:
   When the button is pressed again, a different message is displayed.

Via iDrive

iDrive, for operating principle refer to page 16.

1. "Vehicle Info"
2. "Vehicle status"
3. "Check Control"

4. Select the text message.

Speed limit

You can enter a speed and a Check Control message indicates when you have reached this speed. This enables you, for example, to receive warnings if you exceed a speed limit in an urban area.
You are only warned of reaching this speed a second time if your vehicle speed falls below it again by at least 3 mph/5 km/h.

Displaying, setting or changing limit

iDrive, for operating principle refer to page 16.

1. "Settings"
2. "Limit"
3. "Limit:"

4. Turn the controller until the desired limit is displayed.
5. Press the controller.

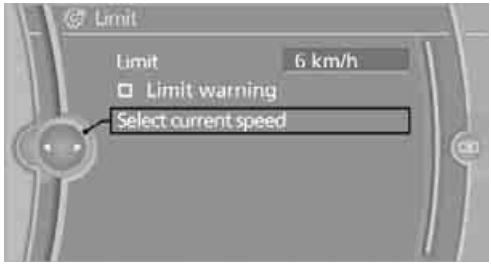
The speed limit is stored.

Applying your current speed as limit

iDrive, for operating principle refer to page 16.

1. "Settings"
2. "Limit"
3. "Select current speed"

CarManuals2.com



4. Press the controller.

The system adopts your current speed as the limit.

Activating/deactivating limit

iDrive, for operating principle refer to page 16.

1. "Settings"
2. "Limit"

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 602 735 - © 08/09 BMW AG

3. "Limit warning"

4. Press the controller.

The limit warning is switched on.

Settings on Control Display

Language on Control Display

Setting the language

iDrive, for operating principle refer to page 16.

1. "Settings"
2. "Language/Units"
3. "Language:"

4. Select the desired language.

The setting is stored for the remote control currently in use.

Setting the voice dialog

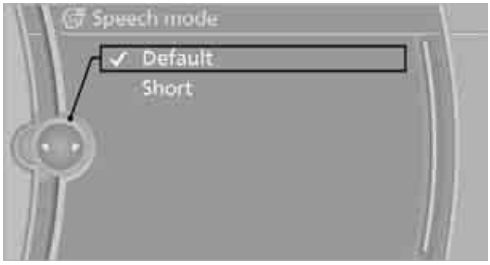
Switch between a standard dialog and a short dialog.

iDrive, for operating principle refer to page 16.

1. "Settings"
2. "Language/Units"
3. "Speech mode:"

CarManuals2.com

4. Select the desired dialog.



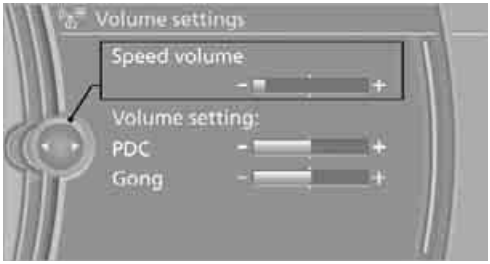
The setting is stored for the remote control currently in use.

Warning signal volume

You can raise or lower the volume of the warning signals, e.g. the 'Fasten safety belt' reminder, relative to the entertainment sound output. The warning signals have a fixed minimum and maximum volume that cannot be dropped below or exceeded.

iDrive, for operating principle refer to page 16.

1. "Settings"
2. "Tone"
3. "Volume settings"



- ▷ "Speed volume": speed-dependent volume control
- ▷ "PDC": volume of the PDC* signal tone relative to the entertainment sound output
- ▷ "Gong": volume of the signal tone, e.g. for the 'Fasten safety belt' reminder, relative to the entertainment sound output

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 602 735 - © 08/09 BMW AG

Brightness of Control Display

The brightness is automatically adapted to the ambient lighting conditions. However, you can change the basic setting.

iDrive, for operating principle refer to page 16.

1. "Settings"
2. "Control display"
3. "Brightness"

CarManuals2.com

4. Turn the controller until the desired setting is selected.
5. Press the controller.

The setting is stored for the remote control currently in use. In bright conditions, for example, the brightness control may not be clearly visible.

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 602 735 - © 08/09 BMW AG

Technology for comfort, convenience and safety

PDC Park Distance Control*

Carmanuals2.com

The concept

The PDC assists you when you are parking. Acoustic signals and an optical display* alert you to the approach of an object from behind your vehicle. To measure the distance, there are four ultrasonic sensors in each bumper. The range of these sensors is approx. 7 ft/2 m. However, an acoustic warning first sounds for the sensors at the front and at the two rear corners at approx. 24 in/60 cm, and for the center rear sensors at approx. 5 ft/1.50 m.

⚠ PDC is a parking aid that can indicate objects when they are approached slowly, as is usually the case when parking. Avoid approaching an object at high speed, otherwise the physical circumstances would mean that the system warning was too late.◀

Switching on automatically

The system starts to operate approx. one second after you shift into reverse or move the selector lever into position R with the engine running or the ignition switched on.

Wait this short time before driving off.

Switching on manually

Press the button, the LED lights up.

Manual deactivation

Press the button again; the LED goes out.

Automatic deactivation

After driving approx. 165 ft/50 m or at over approx. 20 mph/30 km/h, the system is switched off and the LED goes out. You can reactivate the system manually as needed.

Signal tones

When nearing an object, the position is correspondingly indicated by an interval tone. Thus, an object detected to the left rear of the vehicle will be indicated by a signal tone from the left rear speaker, etc. As the distance between vehicle and object decreases, the intervals between the tones become shorter. If the distance to the nearest object falls to below roughly 1 ft/30 cm, then a continuous tone sounds.

An intermittent tone is interrupted after approx. 3 seconds:

- ▷ if you remain in front of an object that was only detected by one of the corner sensors
- ▷ if you drive parallel to a wall

Malfunction

The LED in the button flashes and a message appears on the Control Display. PDC is malfunctioning. Have the system checked.

To prevent this problem, keep the sensors clean and free of ice or snow in order to ensure that they will continue to operate effectively. Do not spray the sensors with high-pressure cleaning jets for long periods and maintain a distance of at least 4 in/10 cm to them.

Exhaust gases near the rear sensors can cause a signal tone to sound.

PDC with visual warning*

The approach of the vehicle to an object is shown on the Control Display. Objects that are farther away are already shown there before a

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 602 735 - © 08/09 BMW AG

signal tone sounds. The display appears on the Control Display as soon as PDC is activated.

System limits

Even with PDC, final responsibility for estimating the distance between the vehicle and any obstacles always remains with the driver. Even when sensors are provided, there is a blind spot in which objects can no longer be detected. The system is also subject to the physical limits that apply to all forms of ultrasonic measurement, such as those encountered with tow bars and trailer couplings, or thin and wedge-shaped objects etc. Low objects already displayed, e.g. curbs, can also disappear from the detection area of the sensors again before or after a continuous tone already sounds. Higher, protruding objects, e.g. ledges, cannot be detected. For this reason, drive with care; otherwise, there is a danger of personal injury or property damage.
Loud sources of sound, inside and outside the vehicle, could drown out the PDC signal tone.◀

Driving stability control systems

Your BMW is equipped with an extended array of systems designed to enhance and maintain vehicle stability under extreme conditions.

Antilock Brake System ABS

ABS prevents locking of the wheels during braking. Safe steering response is maintained even during full braking. Active safety is thus increased.

The ABS is operational every time you start the engine. For information on safe braking, refer to page 109.

CBC Cornering Brake Control

When braking during curves or when braking during a lane change, driving stability and steering response are improved further.

CarManuals2.com

Electronic brake-force distribution

The system controls the brake pressure in the rear wheels to ensure stable braking behavior.

Brake assistant

When you apply the brakes rapidly, this system produces maximum braking force boosting and thus helps to achieve the shortest possible braking distance during full braking maneuvers. This system exploits all of the benefits provided by ABS.

Do not reduce the pressure on the brake pedal for the duration of the full braking.

DSC Dynamic Stability Control

DSC optimizes vehicle stability and traction. It also detects unstable driving states such as understeering and oversteering, and helps keep the vehicle on course within the physical limits by reducing the engine output and by braking at the wheels.

The DSC is operational every time you start the engine.

The laws of physics cannot be repealed, even with DSC. An appropriate driving style always remains the responsibility of the driver. Therefore, do not reduce the additional safety margin further by taking risks.◀

Indicator lamp

The indicator lamp goes out shortly after the engine is started.
The indicator lamp flashes: DSC controls the drive forces and brake forces.
The indicator lamp stays lit: DSC is deactivated.

M Dynamic Mode MDM

The M Dynamic Mode is a mode of the DSC Dynamic Stability Control. It enables driving with greater longitudinal and lateral acceleration on dry road surfaces, however with limited vehicle stability. The system does not provide stabilizing intervention by reducing the engine output and braking at the wheels until the absolute driving limit is reached. Steering corrections by the driver may also be required in this driving state.

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 602 735 - © 08/09 BMW AG

The M Dynamic Mode is deactivated each time the engine is started.

With the M Dynamic Mode activated, stabilizing interventions are only carried out to a reduced degree.◀

To maintain vehicle stability, drive with DSC activated and the M Dynamic Mode deactivated whenever possible.◀

Indicator lamp

MDM

The indicator lamp goes out shortly after the engine is started. The indicator lamp stays lit: M Dynamic Mode is activated.

The indicator lamp lights up continuously and the DSC indicator lamp flashes: the M Dynamic Mode is active and controls the drive and braking forces.

Activating MDM

You activate the M Dynamic Mode with the button on the steering wheel, refer to MDrive on page 50.

With the ignition switched on you can set MDrive on the Control Display.

CarManuals2.com

iDrive, for operating principle refer to page 16.

1. "Settings"
2. Select "M Drive" and press the controller.
3. Select "Drivelogic:" and press the controller.

You can also activate and deactivate the M Dynamic Mode with the MDM button.

Deactivating MDM again

Press the button on the steering wheel or the MDM button* again; the MDM indicator lamp goes out.

Deactivating DSC*

To maintain vehicle stability, drive with the system activated whenever possible.◀

When rocking free or starting off from deep snow or on loose road surfaces, it can be useful to briefly deactivate DSC.

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 602 735 - © 08/09 BMW AG

Press the DSC OFF button; the DSC indicator lamp lights up continuously. DSC and MDM are deactivated.

A message appears on the Control Display. Please note any supplementary information that appears there.

Manual transmission*:

Press and hold the MDM button.

Under unfavorable traction conditions, the engine output may be briefly reduced even when DSC is deactivated.

Reactivating DSC

Press the DSC OFF button; the indicator lamp in the instrument cluster goes out.

You can also activate and deactivate DSC with the button on the steering wheel, refer to MDrive on page 50.

Manual transmission*:

Press the MDM button.

Malfunction in driving-stability control systems

The warning lamp for the brake system lights up yellow, together with the indicator lamps for ABS, DSC and Tire Pressure Monitor or Flat Tire Monitor. A message appears on the Control Display. The driving stability control systems have failed. While you may continue, you should remember to proceed cautiously and drive defensively while avoiding full brake applications. The Tire Pressure Monitor or the Flat Tire Monitor is also malfunctioning. Have the system checked as soon as possible.

Display of the previously described malfunction in Canadian models.

CarManuals2.com

The DSC warning lamp lights up. A malfunction has occurred in DSC including MDM. The stability maintenance functions are no longer available. The vehicle remains operational. Have the system checked as soon as possible.

The brake system warning lamp lights up yellow. A message appears on the Control Display. The brake assistant is defective. Have the system checked as soon as possible.

Display of the previously described malfunction in Canadian models.

Starting off

On slopes

The drive-off assistant enables you to start off conveniently on slopes. The parking brake is not required for this purpose.

1. Hold the vehicle with the brake.
2. Release the brake and begin to drive immediately.

After releasing the brake, begin to drive immediately; otherwise, the drive-off assistant no longer holds the vehicle after approx. 2 seconds and your vehicle will start to roll backward.◀

Start off quickly on slopes. Do not hold the vehicle on a hill by pressing the accelerator, but apply the brake pedal or parking brake instead. Otherwise overheating and heavy wear can result in the area of the Sequential Manual Transmission.◀

To protect the clutch of the Sequential Manual Transmission from overheating, the starting-off

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 602 735 - © 08/09 BMW AG

behavior is changed under heavy loading, e.g. a rapid succession of starts on slopes. This can be noticed from shaking during starting off.

On a slippery surface

1. Select the "P 400" program of M Engine Dynamic Control, refer to page 60.
2. Gently press accelerator pedal to prevent wheels from spinning when starting off.

Clutch protection with manual transmission

Be sure to avoid riding the clutch for longer periods.

Your BMW M6 is equipped with an overload protection for the clutch. Riding the clutch for longer periods is detected and the engine management system limits the engine speed to protect the clutch. This can result in the vehicle failing to accelerate when the clutch pedal is partially depressed.

EDC Electronic Damping Control

The concept

If the influencing variables such as road surface quality or operating conditions such as steering, braking etc. change, the damping automatically adjusts to the new conditions within a fraction of a second.

You can choose from three programs.

"Comfort" program

Select the "Comfort" program if you want comfort-oriented coordination of shock absorbers and steering.

"Normal" program

The "Normal" program offers control that is balanced between comfort and sportiness.

"Sport" program

Select the "Sport" program if you want a consistently sporty coordination of shock absorbers and steering.

Selecting program

Sequential Manual Transmission with Drivelogic:

Manual transmission:

Press the EDC button repeatedly:

▷ "Comfort": LED off.

▷ "Normal": one LED lights up.

▷ "Sport": both LEDs light up.

The last selected program is active each time the engine is started.

You can also activate your preferred program with the button on the steering wheel, refer to MDrive on page 50.

FTM Flat Tire Monitor*

The concept

The Flat Tire Monitor detects a pressure loss in one tire by comparing the speeds of the individual wheels during driving.

CarManuals2.com

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 602 735 - © 08/09 BMW AG

In the event of a pressure loss, there is a change in the rolling circumference and therefore the rotation speed of the corresponding wheel. The system detects this change and reports it as a flat tire.

Functional requirement

The system must have been initialized when the tire inflation pressure was correct; otherwise, reliable signaling of a flat tire is not ensured.

▷ The initialization must be repeated after every correction of the tire inflation pressure and after every tire or wheel change.◀

System limits

⚠ The Flat Tire Monitor is unable to warn the driver of sudden, severe tire damage caused by external factors, nor can it identify the gradual loss of pressure that will inevitably occur in all four tires over a lengthy period of time.◀

In the following situations, the system could be delayed or malfunction:

- ▷ System has not been initialized
- ▷ Driving on snowy or slippery road surface
- ▷ Sporty driving style: slip in the drive wheels, high lateral acceleration
- ▷ Driving with snow chains*

Initializing system

▷ The initialization finishes during driving, which can be interrupted at any time. When driving resumes, the initialization is continued automatically. The system is initialized after this activation phase.

The initialization process adopts the set inflation tire pressures as reference values for the detection of a flat tire. Initialization is started by confirming the inflation pressures.

The system is not initialized when traveling with snow chains*.◀

With Sequential Manual Transmission via the button in the center console:

1. Start the engine, but do not start driving.
2. Press the button for approx. 5 seconds. After the button is released, the warning lamp lights up in yellow for several seconds in the instrument cluster, refer to Indication of a flat tire. The message "Activating..." appears on the Control Display for a few seconds.

3. Start to drive.
   The initialization finishes during the trip without providing feedback.

iDrive, for operating principle refer to page 16.

1. "Vehicle Info"
2. "Vehicle status"
3. "Reset"

4. Start the engine - do not drive away.
5. Start the initialization using "Reset". "Activating..." is displayed on the Control Display.
6. Start to drive.

The initialization finishes during driving, which can be interrupted at any time. "Flat Tire Monitor active" is displayed on the Control Display.

CarManuals2.com

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 602 735 - © 08/09 BMW AG

Indication of a flat tire

The warning lamp lights up red. A message appears on the Control Display. In addition, an acoustic signal sounds. There is a flat tire or extensive inflation pressure loss.

1. Reduce speed and stop the vehicle carefully. Avoid sudden braking and steering maneuvers.
2. Identify damaged tire. To do this, check the tire inflation pressure using the M Mobility System, refer to Producing tire inflation pressure on page 207.
3. Repair the flat tire with the M Mobility System, refer to page 205, or replace the damaged wheel, refer to Changing wheels on page 207.

TPM Tire Pressure Monitor*

The concept

TPM checks the tire inflation pressure in the four mounted tires. The system reports when the tire inflation pressure has dropped considerably in one or several tires.

Functional requirement

In order to assure the reliable reporting of a flat tire, the system must have been reset with the correct tire inflation pressure.

Always use wheels with TPM electronics, otherwise fault-free operation of the system is not ensured.

Reset the system again after each correction of the tire inflation pressure and after every tire or wheel change.◀

System limits

TPM cannot announce sudden serious tire damage caused by external influences.◀

CarManuals2.com

The system does not function properly if it has not been reset, e.g. a flat tire is reported despite correct tire inflation pressures.

The system is inactive and cannot display a flat tire if a wheel has been mounted without TPM electronics, or if TPM is temporarily interfered with by other systems or devices which use the same radio frequency.

Status display on Control Display

The tire and system status is indicated by the color of the tires.

TPM takes the fact that the tire pressure changes during driving into account. A correction is only required if requested by TPM with the color.

Green

The tire pressure matches the learned set state.

"TPM" appears on the Control Display.

One wheel is yellow

Flat tire or a major drop in inflation pressure in the indicated tire. A message appears on the Control Display.

All wheels are yellow

Flat tire or a major drop in inflation pressure in several tires. A message appears on the Control Display.

Gray

The system cannot detect a flat tire.

Reasons for this can be:

- ▷ TPM is being reset
- ▷ Temporary interference due to systems or devices which use the same radio frequency
- ▷ Malfunction

Resetting system

Reset the system again after each correction of the tire inflation pressure and after every tire or wheel change.◀

Resetting finishes during driving, which can be interrupted at any time. When driving resumes, resetting is continued automatically.

iDrive, for operating principle refer to page 16.

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 602 735 - © 08/09 BMW AG

1. Press the **MENU** button.
   This opens the main menu.
2. "Vehicle Info"
3. "Vehicle status"
4. "Reset TPM"

CarManuals2.com

5. Start the engine, but do not start driving.
6. "Reset"
7. "Yes"

Start to drive.
The tires are shown in gray and "Resetting TPM..." is displayed.

8. After a few minutes of driving, the set tire inflation pressures in the tires are applied as the set values to be monitored. The system reset is completed during your drive, and can be interrupted at any time. When driving resumes, resetting is continued automatically. On the Control Display, the tires are shown in green and "Status: TPM active" is displayed again.

▷ If a flat tire is detected during resetting and applying the tire inflation pressures, all tires are shown in yellow on the Control Display. The message "Tire low!" is shown.◀

Notification of low tire inflation pressure

The warning lamp lights up yellow. A message appears on the Control Display. In addition, an acoustic signal sounds. There is a flat tire or extensive inflation pressure loss.

1. Reduce speed and stop the vehicle carefully. Avoid sudden braking and steering maneuvers.
2. If all four wheels are shown in yellow, identify the damaged tire on the vehicle.
3. Repairing flat tire with M Mobility System, refer to page 205, or replace the damaged wheel or wheels, refer to Changing wheels* on page 207.

The spare tire* is equipped with the necessary TPM electronics and is also monitored after mounting and after resetting the system.

Have the tire replaced by a BMW center or a workshop informed on handling TPM which works according to BMW repair procedures with correspondingly trained personnel.

Malfunction

The yellow warning lamp flashes and then lights up continuously. The tires are shown in gray on the Control Display and a message is displayed. No flat tire can be detected.

A message like this is displayed in the following situations:

- ▷ In case of a malfunction;
  have the system checked.
- ▷ If a wheel is mounted without TPM electronics.
- ▷ If TPM is temporarily interfered with by other systems or devices which use the same radio frequency.

Declaration according to NHTSA/ FMVSS 138 Tire Pressure Monitoring Systems

Each tire, including the spare*, should be checked monthly when cold and inflated to the inflation pressure recommended by the vehicle manufacturer on the vehicle placard or tire inflation pressure label. If your vehicle has tires of a different size than the size indicated on the vehicle placard or tire inflation pressure label, you should determine the proper tire inflation pressure for those tires. As an added safety feature, your vehicle has been equipped with a tire

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 602 735 - © 08/09 BMW AG

pressure monitoring system, TPMS, that illuminates a low tire pressure telltale when one or more of your tires are significantly underinflated. Accordingly, when the low tire pressure telltale illuminates, you should stop and check your tires as soon as possible, and inflate them to the proper pressure. Driving on a significantly underinflated tire causes the tire to overheat and can lead to tire failure. Underinflation also reduces fuel efficiency and tire tread life, and may affect the vehicle's handling and stopping ability. Please note that the TPMS is not a substitute for proper tire maintenance, and it is the driver's responsibility to maintain correct tire pressure, even if underinflation has not reached the level to trigger illumination of the TPMS low tire pressure telltale.

The TPMS malfunction indicator is combined with the low tire pressure telltale. When the system detects a malfunction, the telltale will flash for approximately one minute and then remain continuously illuminated. This sequence will continue upon subsequent vehicle startups as long as the malfunction exists. When the malfunction indicator lights up, the system may not be able to detect or signal low tire pressure as intended. TPMS malfunctions may occur for a variety of reasons, including the installation of replacement or alternate tires or wheels on the vehicle that prevent the TPMS from functioning properly. Always check the TPMS malfunction telltale after replacing one or more tires or wheels on your vehicle to ensure that the replacement or alternate tires and wheels allow the TPMS to continue to function properly.

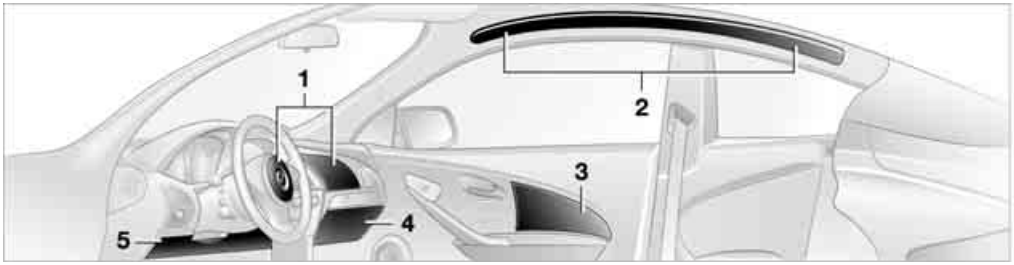
CarManuals2.com

Brake force display

▷ On the left: normal braking.

▷ On the right: heavy braking.

Airbags



The following airbags are located under the marked covers:

1 Front airbags

2 Coupe: Head airbags

3 Side airbags

4 Knee airbag

5 Knee airbag

Protective action

⚠ To ensure that the safety systems continue to provide optimized protection, please observe the adjustment instructions on page 43.◀

The front airbags help protect the driver and front passenger by responding to frontal impacts in which safety belts alone cannot provide adequate restraint. When needed, the

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 602 735 - © 08/09 BMW AG

head and side airbags help provide protection in the event of side impact. The relevant side airbag supports the side upper body area. The head air bag supports the head. The knee airbag protects the legs from colliding with the cockpit.

The airbags are deliberately not triggered in every impact situation, e.g. less severe accidents or rear-end collisions.

CarManuals2.com

Do not apply adhesive materials to the cover panels of the airbags, cover them or modify them in any other way. Do not attempt to remove the airbag restraint system from the vehicle. Do not modify or tamper with either the wiring or the individual components in the airbag system. This category includes the upholstery in the center of the steering wheel, on the instrument panel, the side trim panels on the doors and on the Coupe, the roof pillars along with the sides of the headliner. Do not attempt to remove or dismantle the steering wheel.
Do not touch the individual components directly after the system has been triggered, because there is a danger of burns.
In the event of malfunctions, deactivation, or triggering of the airbag restraint system, have the testing, repair, removal, and disposal of airbag generators executed only by a BMW center or a workshop that works according to BMW repair procedures with correspondingly trained personnel and has the required explosives licenses. Otherwise unprofessional attempts to service the system could lead to failure in an emergency or undesired airbag triggering, either of which could result in personal injury.◀

Warnings and information on the airbags is also provided on the sun visors.

Automatic deactivation of front passenger airbags

The occupation of the seat is detected by evaluating the impression on the occupied seat surface of the front passenger seat. The system correspondingly activates or deactivates the front, knee and side airbags on the front passenger side.

The current status of the front passenger airbag, i.e. deactivated or activated, is indicated by the indicator lamp over the interior rearview mirror, refer to Operating state of front passenger airbags in the following.◀

Before transporting a child in the front passenger seat, read the safety information and follow the instructions under Transporting children safely, refer to page 52.
The front, knee and side airbags on the front passenger side can be deactivated for teenagers and adults in certain sitting positions; the indicator lamp for the front passenger airbags lights up when this occurs. In these cases, change the sitting position so that the front passenger airbags are activated and the indicator lamp goes out. If the desired status cannot be produced by changing the sitting position, transport the corresponding person in the rear seat.
Do not fit seat covers, seat cushion padding, ball mats or other items onto the front passenger seat unless they are specifically recommended by BMW. Do not lay objects under the seat which could press against the seat from below. Otherwise a correct evaluation of the occupied seat surface cannot be ensured.◀

Operating state of front passenger airbags

The illustration here shows a possible arrangement in the Coupe. With some vehicle equipment packages or in the Convertible, the arrangement of the switches and indicator lamps may differ somewhat.

The indicator lamp for the front passenger airbags indicates the operating status of the front, knee and side airbags on the front passenger

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 602 735 - © 08/09 BMW AG

side depending on whether the seat is occupied. The indicator lamp shows whether the front passenger airbags are activated or deactivated.

- The indicator lamp lights up when a child in a child restraint system intended for the purpose is properly detected on the seat. The front, knee and side airbags on the front passenger side are deactivated.

Most child seats are detected by the system, especially the child seats required by the NHTSA at the time the vehicle is manufactured. After installing a child seat, make sure that the indicator lamp for the front passenger airbags lights up. This indicates that the child seat has been detected and the front passenger airbags are not activated.◀

- The indicator lamp does not light up if, for example, the system detects a person of sufficient size seated correctly on the seat. The front, knee and side airbags on the front passenger side are activated.
- The indicator lamp does not light up when the seat is empty.
  But the front, knee and side airbags on the front passenger side are still deactivated.

Operational readiness of airbag system

From radio readiness, refer to page 55, the warning lamp lights up briefly, indicating the operational readiness of the entire airbag system and the safety belt tensioners.

Airbag system malfunction

- Warning lamp does not light up from radio readiness.
- Warning lamp lights up continuously.

Have the airbag system checked immediately in case of a malfunction, otherwise there is a danger that the airbag system may not respond in the expected manner in an accident despite an impact of corresponding intensity.◀

Convertible: rollover protection system

The rollover protection system is automatically activated in the event of an accident or a critical driving situation, extreme inclination on the longitudinal axis, or loss of ground contact. The rollover bars located behind the rear head restraints are deployed within fractions of a second.

As a supplement to the rollover bar integrated into the windshield frame, the rollover protection system ensures that all vehicle occupants have the necessary headroom.

Always keep the path of movement of the rollover protection system clear.
In minor accidents, you are protected by the fastened safety belt and, depending on accident severity, by the safety belt tensioner and multi-phase airbag retention system.◀

Lowering

If the rollover protection system experienced no impact after automatic activation, then it can be lowered again. No tools are necessary for this purpose.

1. Press the release backward and hold in that position.

CarManuals2.com

2. Press the rollover protection unit halfway down from above.

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 602 735 - © 08/09 BMW AG

3. Let go of the release.
4. Press the rollover protection unit down until it snaps into place.

5. Use the same procedure for the second rollover protection unit.

Have the rollover protection system checked after unexpected triggering.

Never move the convertible top when the rollover protection system is raised.
No changes of any nature may be made to the individual components of the rollover protection system and wiring.
Work on the rollover protection system may only be performed at a BMW center.
Unprofessional attempts to service the system can lead to failure or malfunction.
For a system check and to ensure long-term functioning, you must comply with the maintenance intervals of the service requirements, refer to page 68.◀

Head-up Display*

The concept

With the Head-up Display important information is projected into the driver's field of view, e.g. navigation instructions. This enables you to take in this information without looking away from the road.

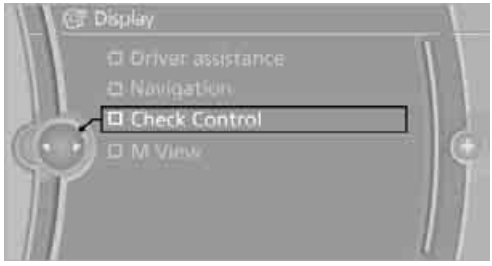
Switching on/off

Press the button.

Selecting displays

iDrive, for operating principle refer to page 16.

1. "Settings"
2. "Head-Up display"
3. "Displayed information"
4. Select the desired displays in the Head-up Display.



The information appears in the Head-up Display.

"M View": the M view appears in the Head-up Display. Information unavailable in the M

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 602 735 - © 08/09 BMW AG

view appears on the Control Display in gray and cannot be selected.

■ "M View": the default view is displayed.

The M view for the Head-up Display can also be selected with the button on the steering wheel, refer to MDrive on page 50.

CarManuals2.com

The settings are stored for the remote control currently in use.

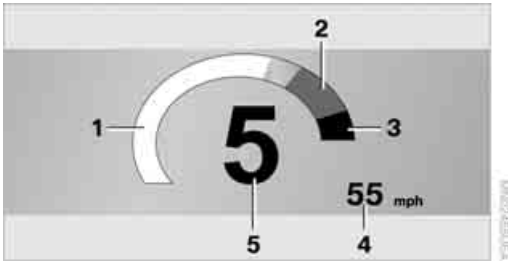
Default view

1 Navigation instructions

2 Stored desired speed of cruise control

3 Speed

M view



1 Current engine speed, highlighted

2 Advance warning field of tachometer

3 Red warning field of tachometer, also refer to Tachometer on page 65

4 Speed

5 Gear display

For information on the shift lights in the tachometer, refer to page 60.

Setting brightness

The brightness of the display is adapted to the ambient lighting conditions. However, you can change the base setting.

With the low beams switched on, the brightness can also be adjusted with the thumbwheel of the instrument lighting.

iDrive, for operating principle refer to page 16.

1. "Settings"
2. "Head-Up display"
3. "Brightness"
4. Turn the controller.
   The brightness is adjusted.

The setting is stored for the remote control currently in use.

Notes

The visibility of the displays in the Head-up Display is influenced by:

▷ Sunglasses with certain polarization filters

▷ Certain seating positions

▷ Objects on the cover of the Head-up Display

▷ Wet road surface and unfavorable lighting conditions

If the image is distorted, please have the basic setting checked at a BMW center.

Special windshield

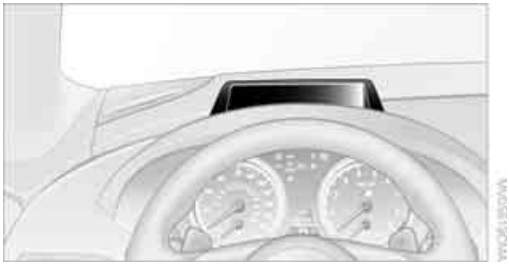
The windshield is part of the system. The shape of the windshield complies with the requirements of the Head-up Display to enable a precise display. A film in the windshield prevents double images from being displayed.

Windshield replacement should be carried out by a BMW center or a workshop that works according to BMW repair procedures with correspondingly trained personnel.

Care instructions

You can find valuable information on this topic under Care, starting on page 199.

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 602 735 - © 08/09 BMW AG



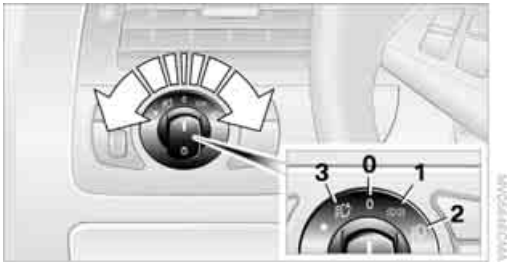
Only clean the cover of the Head-up Display with a soft, nonabrasive cloth or with a display cleaning cloth; otherwise, you may damage it.◀

CarManuals2.com

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 602 735 - © 08/09 BMW AG

Lamps

Parking lamps/low beams



0 Lights off and daytime running lamps*

1 Parking lamps and daytime running lamps*

2 Low beams and welcome lamps

3 Automatic headlamp control, daytime running lamps*, welcome lamps, Adaptive Light Control* and High-beam Assistant*

If you open the driver's door with the ignition switched off, the exterior lighting is switched off when the light switch is in position **2** or **3**. The daytime running lamps have already been switched off at the same time as the ignition.

For this reason, switch on the side marker lamps as needed, switch position **1**; otherwise, the vehicle is not lit.

Parking lamps

In switch position **1**, the front, rear and side vehicle lighting is switched on. You can use the parking lamps for parking.

▷ The parking lamps drain the battery. Do not leave them switched on for long periods of time, otherwise it may no longer be possible to start the engine. It is preferable to switch on the roadside parking lamps on one side, refer to page 91.◀

Low beams

The low beams light up when the light switch is in position **2** and the ignition is on.

Automatic headlamp control

In switch position **3**, the system activates the low beams and switches them on or off in response to changes in ambient light conditions, for instance, in a tunnel, at dawn and dusk and in case of precipitation. Adaptive Light Control* is active. The LED next to the symbol lights up when the low beams are on.

CarManuals2.com

You can also change to the daytime running lamps, refer to page 90. In the situation described above, the lamps switch to the low beams.

A blue sky with the sun low on the horizon can cause the lights to be switched on.

⚠ The automatic headlamp control cannot serve as a substitute for your personal judgment in determining when the lamps should be switched on in response to ambient lighting conditions. For example, the sensors cannot detect fog of hazy weather. To avoid safety risks, you should always switch on the low beams manually under these conditions.◀

Welcome lamps

If you leave the light switch in position **2** or **3** when parking the vehicle, then when you unlock the vehicle, the parking lamps and interior lighting remain illuminated for a brief time.

Activating/deactivating welcome lamps

iDrive, for operating principle refer to page 16.

1. "Settings"
2. "Lighting"

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 602 735 - © 08/09 BMW AG

3. "Welcome light"

The welcome lamps are switched on.

The setting is stored for the remote control currently in use.

Pathway lighting

If you activate the headlamp flasher after switching off the ignition with the lamps switched off, the low beams come on and remain on for a certain time. You can set the duration or deactivate the function via iDrive.

iDrive, for operating principle refer to page 16.

1. "Settings"
2. "Lighting"
3. "Pathway lighting:"
4. Set or deactivate the duration.

The setting is stored for the remote control currently in use.

Daytime running lamps*

The daytime running lamps light up in position **0**, **1** and **3**. If the light switch remains in position **1**, the parking lamps light up after the ignition is switched off.

Activating/deactivating daytime running lamps*

iDrive, for operating principle refer to page 16.

1. "Settings"
2. "Lighting"
3. "Daytime running lamps"

The daytime running lamps are switched on.

The setting is stored for the remote control currently in use.

Adaptive Light Control*

The concept

Adaptive Light Control is a variable headlamp control system that enables better illumination of the road surface. Depending on the steering angle and other parameters, the light from the headlamp follows the course of the road.

Activating Adaptive Light Control

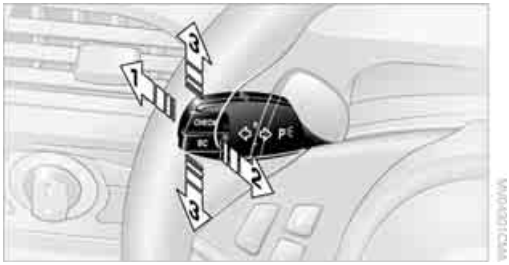
With the ignition switched on, turn the light switch into position **3**, refer to page 89.

To avoid blinding oncoming traffic, the Adaptive Light Control is not active when driving in reverse and points toward the passenger side when the vehicle is stopped.

Carmanuals2.com

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 602 735 - © 08/09 BMW AG

High beams/ roadside parking lamps



1 High beams
2 Headlamp flasher
3 Roadside parking lamps

Roadside parking lamps, left or right*

You also enjoy the option of lighting up just one side of your vehicle when parking.

Switching on

After parking the vehicle, press the lever up or down beyond the resistance point, arrow **3**.

The roadside parking lamps drain the battery. Do not leave them switched on for long periods of time, otherwise it may no longer be possible to start the engine.◀

Switching off

Briefly press the lever in the opposite direction up to the resistance point, arrow **3**.

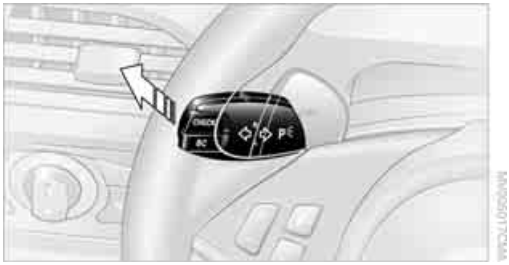
High-beam Assistant*

The concept

This system automatically switches the high beams on and off. A sensor on the front side of the inside rearview mirror controls the process. The assistant makes sure that the high beams are switched on whenever traffic conditions permit. This relieves you of the burden of constantly switching back and forth and simultaneously provides you with the best possible visibility. Naturally, you can intervene at any time to switch the high beams on and off as usual.

Activating system

1. Turn the light switch to position **3**, refer to page 89.
2. With the low beams switched on, briefly press the turn signal lever in the high-beam direction.



The indicator lamp in the instrument cluster lights up when the High-beam Assistant is activated. The system automatically switches between high beams and low beams, reacting to oncoming traffic, vehicles ahead of you, and sufficiently lit areas, e.g. in built-up zones.

Manually switching between high beams and low beams

If you wish or the situation requires, you can intervene at any time.

- If the High-beam Assistant has switched on the high beams, but you wish to use the low beams, just switch on the low beams with the turn signal lever. This deactivates the High-beam Assistant.
  In order to reactivate the system, briefly press the turn signal lever in the high-beam direction.
- If the High-beam Assistant has switched on the low beams, but you wish to use the high beams, simply switch on the high beams as usual. This deactivates the system and it is up to you to switch back to low beams.
  In order to reactivate the system, briefly press the turn signal lever in the high-beam direction.
- When the low beams are on, use the headlamp flasher as usual.

CarManuals2.com

System limits

The High-beam Assistant is designed to maximize the amount of time that high beams can be safely used and to quickly switch back to low beams when traffic approaches. The system cannot completely replace driver intervention when unusual conditions are encountered. For this reason, switch to low beams when circumstances so dictate. Failure to do so can pose a safety risk.◀

Below are a few examples of situations in which the system may not react or may only function to a limited degree, requiring personal intervention:

- ▷ in extremely unfavorable weather conditions such as fog or heavy precipitation
- ▷ in sensing road users with poor inherent illumination such as pedestrians, cyclists, equestrians, horse-drawn vehicles, railroad or shipping traffic close to the road, and at deer crossings
- ▷ in tight curves, on steep crests or dips, with cross-traffic, or with partially hidden oncoming traffic on divided highways
- ▷ in poorly illuminated areas and in the presence of highly reflective signs
- ▷ in the low speed range
- ▷ when the windshield is fogged up, dirty or covered with stickers, decals etc. in the area of the inside rearview mirror
- ▷ when the sensor is dirty. Clean the sensor on the front side of the inside rearview mirror with a cloth slightly moistened with glass cleaner

Moreover, no system can operate without limitations. High-beam Assistant operation is subject to conditions that may reduce the system's ability to recognize the difference between actual vehicle head lamps or tail lamps and, for example, highly reflective signs, markers, and streetlights. To be on the safe side, the system may periodically interpret these situations as conditions that require low beams. Below are some of the situations in which premature switching to low beams can occur:

- ▷ approaching large and/or highly reflective signs
- ▷ approaching certain lights, such as driveway lighting and porch lights
- ▷ approaching certain traffic signals
- ▷ approaching large reflective markers

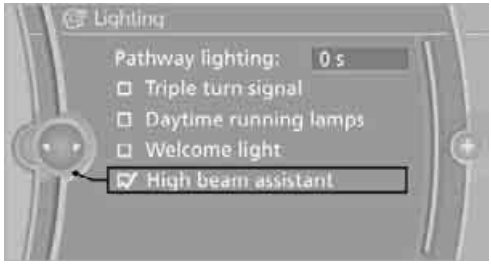
In these situations, the system may interpret the above conditions as a vehicle ahead requiring a switch to low beams. When the conditions return to normal, the system will reactivate the high beams.

The High-beam Assistant cannot replace the driver's responsibility for complying with state laws on high-beam switching or for adapting to visibility and traffic conditions.

Switching off via iDrive

iDrive, for operating principle refer to page 16.

1. "Settings"
2. "Lighting"
3. "High beam assistant"



High beam assistant is activated and is stored for the remote control currently in use.

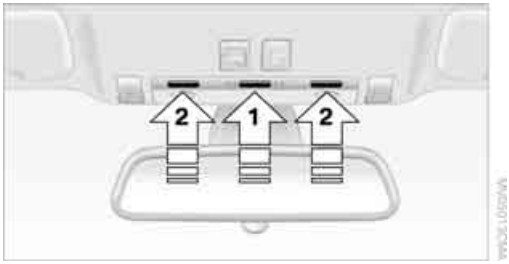
CarManuals2.com

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 602 735 - © 08/09 BMW AG

Instrument lighting

The lighting intensity can be adjusted with the thumbwheel with the parking lamps/low beams switched on.

Interior lamps



Control of the interior lamps, footwell lamps, door entry lighting, courtesy lamps and sill panel lighting is automatic.

With the courtesy lamps, LED lights are provided in the outside rearview mirrors to illuminate the exterior area around the doors.

▷ To protect the battery, all lamps in the vehicle are switched off approx. 15 minutes after radio readiness is switched off, refer to Start/Stop button on page 55.◀

Switching interior lamps on and off manually

Press button **1**.

If the interior lamps, footwell lamps, door entry lighting, courtesy lamps and sill panel lighting are to remain switched off continually, press the button for approx. 3 seconds.

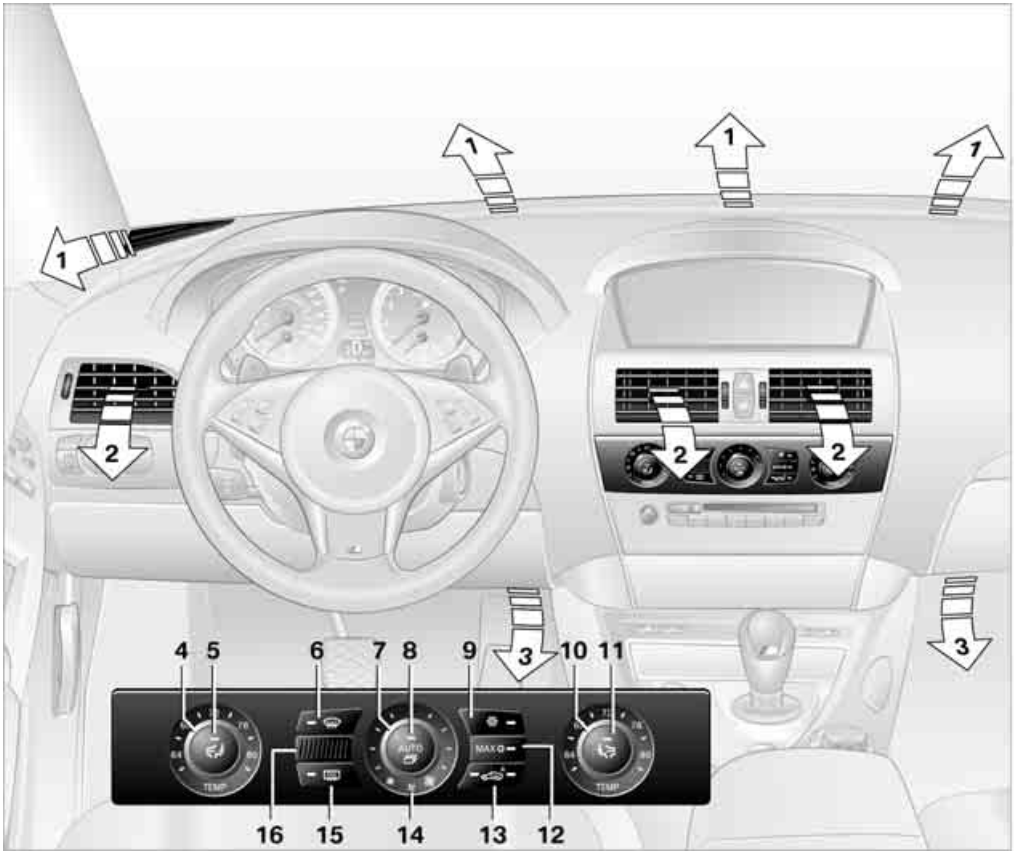
Reading lamps

The reading lamps are beside the interior lamp: You can turn them on and off using buttons **2** located next to the lamps.

CarManuals2.com

Climate

Automatic climate control



1 Airflow directed toward the windshield and side windows

2 Air for the upper body area, refer to Ventilation on page 97

3 Air to footwell

4 Temperature, left side of passenger compartment

5 Manual air distribution, driver's side

6 Defrosting windows and removing condensation

7 Manual air volume, switching off automatic climate control, residual heat utilization

8 AUTO program

9 Switching cooling function on and off manually

10 Temperature, right side of passenger compartment

11 Manual air distribution, front passenger side

12 Maximum cooling

13 AUC Automatic recirculated-air control/ recirculated-air mode

14 LED for residual heat utilization and parked car ventilation system

15 Rear window defroster

CarManuals2.com

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 602 735 - © 08/09 BMW AG

16 Air grill for interior temperature sensor – please keep clear and unobstructed

The current setting for air distribution is displayed on the Control Display.

A congenial climate

The AUTO program offers the optimum air distribution and air volume for virtually all conditions, refer to AUTO program below. Now you only need to select an interior temperature comfortable for you.

The following sections contain more detailed information on the available setting options.

Most settings are stored for the remote control currently in use, also refer to Personal Profile settings on page 27.

AUTO program

The AUTO program handles the adjustment of air volume and air distribution to the windshield and side windows, in the direction of the upper body and in the footwell. It also adapts your instructions for the temperature to outside influences throughout the year.

CarManuals2.com

The cooling function is switched on along with the AUTO program. At the same time, a condensation sensor controls the program in such a way that window condensation is prevented as much as possible.

Intensity of AUTO program

You can adjust the intensity of the AUTO program by repeatedly pressing the AUTO button. The respective current setting is briefly displayed on the Control Display when the button is pressed.

Select the intensity of the AUTO program using the AUTO button:

▷ – Low

▷ – Medium

▷ – High

Convertible program*

When the convertible top is open, the convertible program is active in addition. In the convertible program, the automatic climate control is optimized for driving with the convertible top open. In addition, the air volume is increased as the speed increases.

▷ The effect of the convertible program can be greatly enhanced if the wind deflector is installed.◀

Temperature

Set the desired temperature individually on the driver's and front passenger side.

The automatic climate control achieves this temperature as quickly as possible at any time of year, if necessary with the maximum cooling or heating capacity, and then keeps it constant.

▷ When changing between different temperature settings in rapid succession, the automatic climate control does not have sufficient time to adjust the set temperature.◀

In the highest setting you activate the maximum heating output, regardless of the outside temperature.

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 602 735 - © 08/09 BMW AG

Defrosting windows and removing condensation

Quickly remove ice and condensation from the windshield and front side windows.
To do this, also switch on the cooling function.

Rear window defroster

The rear window defroster switches off after a while.
Convertible: the rear window defroster is only activated when the rear window is closed.
Depending on the vehicle equipment, upper wires are used as an antenna and are not part of the rear window defroster.

Air volume, manual

You can adjust the air volume by turning. You can reactivate the automatic mode for the air volume with the AUTO button.

The air volume is reduced to save battery power. The display stays the same.

Air distribution, manual

You can route the air flowing out into the vehicle interior via various programs, separately for the driver's and passenger's side:

- ▷ Upper body region
- ▷ Upper body region and footwell
- ▷ Footwell
- ▷ Driver's side: windows and footwell
- ▷ Individual program

Selecting program

Press the button repeatedly until the desired air distribution of the respective program is shown on the Control Display.

Switching cooling function on and off

CarManuals2.com

The cooling function cools and dehumidifies the incoming air before also reheating it as required, according to the temperature setting. This function is only available when the engine is running.

The cooling function helps to avoid condensation on the window surfaces or to quickly remove them.

Depending on the weather, the windshield may fog over briefly when the engine is started.

The cooling function is also switched on with the AUTO program.

Maximum cooling

Maximally cooled air is obtained as quickly as possible at an outside temperature above approx. 32 °F / 0 °C and with the engine running.

At the lowest temperature, the automatic climate control switches into recirculating air mode. The maximum air volume flows out of the vents for the upper body. Therefore, open these vents for maximum cooling.

AUC Automatic recirculated-air control/recirculated-air mode

You can respond to pollutants or unpleasant odors in the immediate environment by suspending the supply of outside air. The system then recirculates the air currently within the vehicle. During AUC operation, a sensor detects pollutants in the outside air and controls the shut-off automatically.

By pressing the button repeatedly, you can request three operating modes:

- ▷ LED off: outside air flows in continuously.
- ▷ Right LED on, AUC mode: the system detects pollutants in the outside air and shuts off the supply as needed.
- ▷ Left LED on, recirculated-air mode: the supply of outside air is permanently shut off.

⚠ Should the windows fog up in the recirculated-air mode, press the AUTO button or switch off the recirculated-air mode and increase the air volume if necessary.
The recirculated-air mode should not be used over an extended period of time, as the air qual-

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 602 735 - © 08/09 BMW AG

ity inside the vehicle deteriorates continuously.◀

Residual heat

The heat stored in the engine is used to heat the passenger compartment, e.g. while stopped at a school to pick up a child.

1. Switch off the engine.
2. Turn to the right, refer to arrow.

The function can be switched on when the following conditions are met:

- ▷ up to 15 minutes after switching off the engine
- ▷ with engine at operating temperature
- ▷ with sufficient battery voltage
- ▷ at an outside temperature below 77 °F / 25 °C

From radio readiness the interior temperature, the air volume and the air distribution can be set.

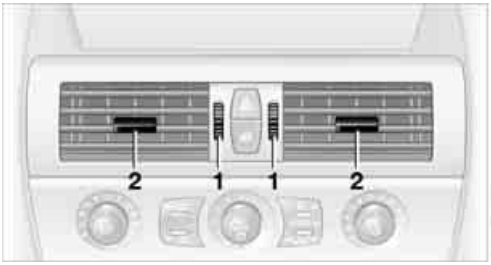
Switching automatic climate control on and off

CarManuals2.com

1. Turn to the left to minimum air volume.
2. After approx. 1 second, turn to the left again.

You switch on the system again by pressing any button of the automatic climate control.

Ventilation



1 Thumbwheels to smoothly open and close vent outlets

2 Levers to change the vent outlet direction

⚠ Do not drop any foreign objects into the vent outlets; otherwise, they could be catapulted outwards and cause injuries.◀

Ventilation for cooling

Adjust the vent outlets to direct the flow of cool air in your direction, for instance, if the interior has become too warm, etc.

Draft-free ventilation

Set the vent outlets so that the air flows past you and is not directed straight at you.

Adjusting temperature in upper body region

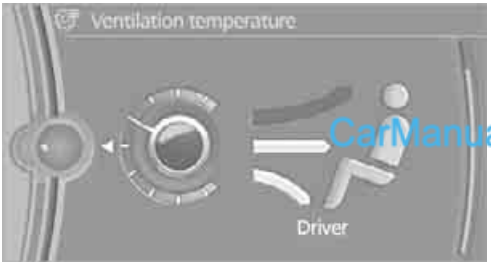
You can adjust the temperature in the upper body region with iDrive.

iDrive, for operating principle refer to page 16.

1. Press the **MENU** button.
   This opens the start menu.
2. "Settings"
3. "Climate"

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 602 735 - © 08/09 BMW AG

4. "Ventilation temperature"



CarManuals2.com

Microfilter/activated-charcoal filter

The microfilter removes dust and pollen from the incoming air. The activated-charcoal filter provides additional protection by filtering gaseous pollutants from the outside air. Your BMW center replaces this combined filter as a standard part of your scheduled maintenance.
You can have more detailed information shown on the Control Display, refer to page 68.

Parked car ventilation*

The concept

The parked car ventilation blows air into the passenger compartment to lower interior temperatures.

It is ready to use in the parked car mode at any outside temperature.

You can set two different times for the system to start. The parked car ventilation can also be switched on and off directly. It remains switched on for 30 minutes.

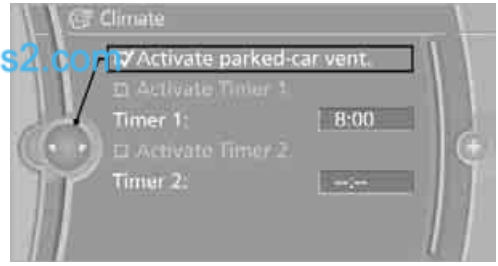
Since the system uses a substantial amount of electrical current, you should refrain from activating it twice in succession without allowing the battery to be recharged in normal operation between use.

The air emerges through the upper body region vent outlets in the instrument panel. These vent outlets must be open for the system to operate.

Switching on and off directly

iDrive, for operating principle refer to page 16.

1. "Settings"
2. "Climate"
3. "Activate parked-car vent."



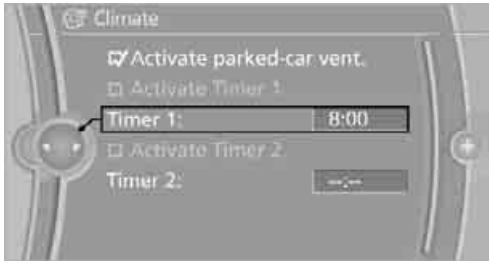
The parked car ventilation is switched on.

The symbol on the display of the automatic climate control flashes.

Preselecting activation times

iDrive, for operating principle refer to page 16.

1. "Settings"
2. "Climate"
3. "Activate Timer 1" or "Activate Timer 2"
4. "Timer 1:" or "Timer 2:"



5. Turn the controller: set the hours.
6. Press the controller: the setting is accepted.
7. Turn the controller: set the minutes.
8. Press the controller: the setting is accepted.

The switch-on time is activated.

The symbol on the display of the automatic climate control lights up.

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 602 735 - © 08/09 BMW AG

The symbol on the automatic climate control display flashes when the system has switched on.

The respective system is switched on within the next 24 hours only. Please reactivated it after this time.◀

CarManuals2.com

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 602 735 - © 08/09 BMW AG

Practical interior accessories

Integrated universal remote control*

The concept

The integrated universal remote control can replace as many as three hand-held transmitters for various remote-controlled accessories, such as garage and gate or lighting systems. The integrated universal remote control registers and stores signals from the original hand-held transmitters.

The signal of an original hand-held transmitter can be programmed on one of the three memory buttons **1**. After this, the programmed memory button **1** will operate the system in question. The LED **2** flashes to confirm transmission of the signal.

Should you sell your vehicle one day, be sure to delete the stored programs beforehand for your safety, refer to page 101.

To prevent possible damage or injury, before programming or using the integrated universal remote control, always inspect the immediate area to make certain that no people, animals or objects are within the travel range of the device. Also, comply with the safety precautions of the original hand-held transmitter.◀

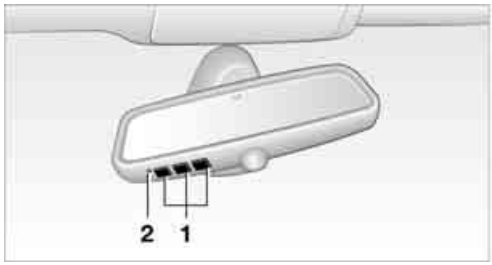
CarManuals2.com

Checking compatibility

If you see this symbol on the packaging or in the manual supplied with the original hand-held transmitter, it is safe to assume that it is compatible with the integrated universal remote control.

If you have additional questions, please contact your BMW center or call: 1-800-355-3515.
Information is also provided on the Internet at: www.bmwusa.com or www.homelink.com.
HomeLink is a registered trademark of Johnson Controls, Inc.◀

Programming



1 Memory buttons

2 LED

Fixed-code hand-held transmitters

1. Switch on ignition, refer to page 55.
2. When starting operation for the first time: Press the left and right-hand memory button **1** for approx. 20 seconds until the LED **2** flashes quickly. All stored programs are deleted.
3. Hold the original hand-held transmitter at a distance of approx. 4 in/10 cm to 12 in/ 30 cm from the memory buttons **1**.

   The required distance between the hand-held transmitter and the memory buttons **1** depends on the relevant system of the original hand-held transmitter used.◀
4. Simultaneously press the transmit button on the original hand-held transmitter and the desired memory button **1** on the integrated universal remote control. The LED **2** flashes slowly at first. As soon as the LED **2** flashes rapidly, release both buttons. If the LED **2** does not flash rapidly after approx. 15 seconds, alter the distance and repeat the step.
5. To program other original hand-held transmitters, repeat steps 3 and 4.

The corresponding memory button **1** is now programmed with the signal of the original hand-held transmitter.

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 602 735 - © 08/09 BMW AG

You can operate the device when the engine is running or when the ignition is switched on.

If the device fails to function even after repeated programming, check whether the original hand-held transmitter uses an alternating-code system. To do so, either read the instructions for the original hand-held transmitter or hold down the programmed memory button **1** of the integrated universal remote control. If the LED **2** on the integrated universal remote control flashes rapidly for a short time and then remains lit for approx. 2 seconds, this indicates that the original hand-held transmitter uses an alternating-code system. In the case of an alternating-code system, program the memory buttons **1** as described at Alternating-code hand-held transmitters.◀

Alternating-code hand-held transmitters

To program the integrated universal remote control, consult the operating instructions for the equipment to be set. You will find information there on the possibilities for synchronization.
When programming hand-held transmitters that employ an alternating code, please observe the following supplementary instructions:

Programming will be easier with the aid of a second person.◀

1. Park your vehicle within the range of the remote-controlled device.
2. Program the integrated universal remote control as described above in the section Fixed-code hand-held transmitters.
3. Locate the button on the receiver of the device to be set, e.g. on the drive unit.
4. Press the button on the receiver of the device to be set. After step 4, you have approx. 30 seconds for step 5.
5. Press the programmed memory button **1** of the integrated universal remote control three times.

The corresponding memory button **1** is now programmed with the signal of the original hand-held transmitter.

If you have any additional questions, please contact your BMW center.◀

Deleting all stored programs

Press the left and right-hand memory button **1** for approx. 20 seconds until the LED **2** flashes. All stored programs are deleted.

CarManuals2.com

Individual programs cannot be deleted.

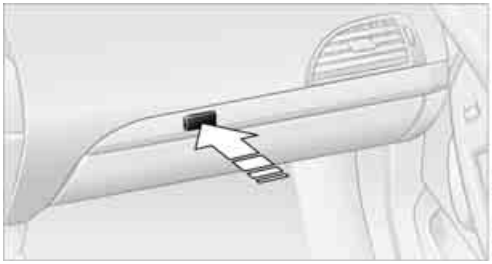
Rememorizing individual programs

1. Hold the original hand-held remote control approx. 4 in/10 cm to 12 in/30 cm away from the memory buttons **1**.

   The required distance between the hand-held transmitter and the memory buttons **1** depends on the relevant system of the original hand-held transmitter used.◀
2. Press the desired memory button **1** of the integrated universal remote.
3. If the LED **2** flashes slowly after approx. 20 seconds, press the command button of the original hand-held transmitter. As soon as the LED **2** flashes rapidly, release both buttons. If the LED **2** does not flash rapidly after approx. 15 seconds, alter the distance and repeat the step.

Glove compartment

Opening



Press the button. The glove compartment opens automatically and the lamps come on.

To prevent injury in the event of an accident while the vehicle is being driven,

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 602 735 - © 08/09 BMW AG

close the glove compartment immediately after use.◀

Closing

Raise the lid into the closed position.

CarManuals2.com

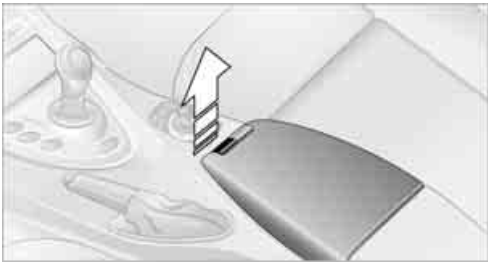
USB interface for data transmission

Port for importing and exporting data on USB devices, e.g. music collections.

Observe the following when connecting:

- ▷ Do not use force when plugging the connector into the USB audio interface.
- ▷ Do not connect devices such as fans or lamps to the USB audio interface.
- ▷ Do not connect USB hard discs.
- ▷ Do not use the USB interface to recharge external devices.

Center armrest



A storage compartment is located in the armrest between the front seats. This compartment is integrated into the central locking system and can also be locked separately using the hotel function, refer to page 31.

To open the cover:
Pull the left button. The cover opens and can be folded upward.

Depending on the version, the storage compartment can be equipped with a corresponding cradle* for the telephone or mobile phone.

Connection for external audio device

A connection for an external audio device is located in the storage compartment. You can, for example, connect a CD player or an MP3 player, and play the sound via the vehicle speakers, refer to page 156.

Adjusting height

The center armrest can be set in two positions.

Pull the right button:
Move the armrest upward or downward and lock it in the desired position.

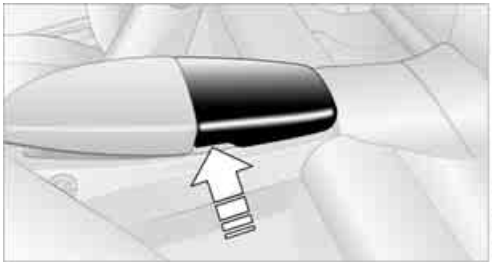
Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 602 735 - © 08/09 BMW AG

Storage compartments

Storage compartments in the passenger compartment

Storage compartment behind center armrest

CarManuals2.com



To open, raise the cover at the left or right edge. The compartment contains the cupholder and the lock for the hotel function, refer to page 31.

Other compartments and nets

Other compartments are provided in the doors as well as in the front center console*.
Ticket pockets are located in the sun visors.
Storage nets are located on the backrests of the front seats and in the passenger footwell*.

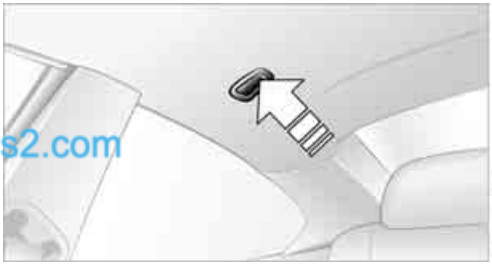
⚠ To prevent the risk of injury during an accident, do not stow hard or sharp-edged items in the nets.◀

Storage compartments in the luggage compartment

You have the following storage options in the luggage compartment:

- ▷ Storage compartment in the right side trim panel, which is also suitable, if you so desire, for accommodating the vehicle literature.
- ▷ Net at the loading lip for smaller items.

Coupe: Clothes hooks



To fold down, press at the top edge.

⚠ When hanging clothing on the hooks, ensure that it will not obstruct the driver's vision. Do not hang heavy objects on the hooks. If you do so, they could cause personal injury to occupants during braking or evasive maneuvers.◀

Cupholders

⚠ Use lightweight, unbreakable containers and do not transport hot beverages. Otherwise, there is an increased risk of injury in the event of an accident. Do not force containers that are too large into the cupholders, otherwise damage could result.◀

The compartment of the rear center console contains a built-in cupholder and a removable one.

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 602 735 - © 08/09 BMW AG

The removable cupholder can be inserted into the side of the center console.

Ashtray*

Opening

Press the trim strip of the cover.

Emptying

Press the opened cover beyond the resistance point, refer to arrow: the ashtray lifts up for removal.

Cigarette lighter*

CarManuals2.com

Press in the lighter with the engine running or the ignition switched on.

The lighter can be removed as soon as it pops back out.

Hold or touch the hot cigarette lighter by the knob only. Holding or touching it in other areas could result in burns.
Always take along the remote control when you leave the vehicle, otherwise children could, for example, use the lighter and burn themselves.◀

Connecting electrical devices

Socket

With the engine running or the ignition switched on, the cigarette lighter socket can be used as a power outlet for hand flashlights, car vacuum cleaners, etc., with power ratings of up to approx. 200 W at 12 V. Avoid damaging the socket due to inserting plugs of different shapes or sizes.

In front passenger footwell

Access to the socket:
Fold open the cover.

Ski bag*

The ski bag permits safe and clean transport of up to two pairs of standard skis or one snowboard.

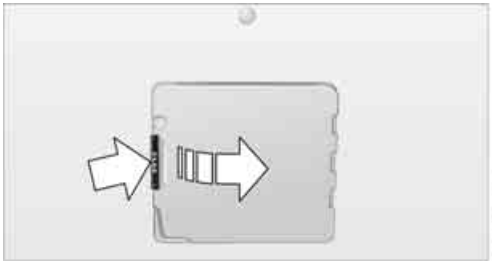
You can use the ski bag to stow skis up to 6.9 ft/ 2.10 m long.

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 602 735 - © 08/09 BMW AG

Loading

1. Press the button downward and pull the filler element forward.

2. Extend the ski bag between the front seats. The zipper facilitates access to the stowed items and drying of the ski bag.
3. Press the button in the luggage compartment.



4. Open the loading flap and use the magnetic holder to secure it to the rear panel.

To stow the ski bag, perform the above steps in reverse order.

Only stow clean skis in the ski bag. Wrap sharp edges to prevent damage.

Securing cargo

After loading, secure the ski bag and its contents. Tighten the retaining strap on the tensioning buckle for this purpose.

⚠ Secure the ski bag in this way. If you fail to do so, it could endanger vehicle occupants during braking or evasive maneuvers.

To refit the filler element, insert the two tabs at the bottom into the strip and press the filler element back into place. Make sure that you do not damage the rear seat upholstery.◀

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 602 735 - © 08/09 BMW AG

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 602 735 - © 08/09 BMW AG

Driving tips

This section provides you with information useful in dealing with specific driving and operating conditions.

CarManuals2.com

Things to remember when driving

Break-in period

Moving parts need breaking-in time to adjust to each other. To ensure that your vehicle continues to provide optimized economy of operation throughout an extended service life, we request that you devote careful attention to the following section.

CarManuals2.com

Do not use the driving programs 5 and 6, refer to Drivelogic on page 59, during break-in.

Engine and differential

Always obey all official speed limits.

Up to 1,200 miles/2,000 km

Drive at changing engine and driving speeds, however do not exceed 5,500 rpm or 105 mph/170 km/h.

Avoid full-throttle operation and use of the transmission's kickdown mode during these initial miles.

From 1,200 miles/2,000 km to 3,000 miles/5,000 km

The engine and driving speed can gradually be increased up to a continuous vehicle speed of 135 mph/220 km/h. Only drive at top speed briefly, e.g. when passing.

Transmission

The function of the transmission is only at its optimized level after driving a distance of approx. 300 miles/500 km. Do not exceed engine speeds of 5,500 rpm during this time.

Tires

Due to technical factors associated with their manufacture, tires do not achieve their full traction potential until after an initial break-in period. Therefore, drive reservedly during the first 200 miles/300 km.

Brake system

Brakes require an initial break-in period of approx. 300 miles/500 km to achieve optimized contact and wear patterns between brake pads and rotors. Drive in a reserved manner during this break-in period.

Clutch

The function of the clutch is only at its optimized level after a distance driven of approx. 300 miles/500 km. With manual transmission: During this break-in period, engage the clutch gently.

Following part replacement

Observe the break-in instructions again if components mentioned above must be replaced after subsequent driving operation.

General driving notes

Ground clearance

Make sure that sufficient ground clearance is available. To drive down curbs, select the "Sport" program of the EDC Electronic Damping Control, refer to page 79, to keep the ground clearance as uniform as possible. Otherwise the vehicle may be damaged.◀

Closing luggage compartment lid

Only drive with the luggage compartment lid completely closed, otherwise exhaust can penetrate into the passenger compartment.◀

If it is absolutely necessary to drive with the luggage compartment lid open:

1. Coupe: close both windows.
   Convertible: with closed top, close all windows.
2. Increase the air volume of the automatic climate control to a high level, refer to page 96.

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 602 735 - © 08/09 BMW AG

Hot exhaust system

As in all vehicles, extremely high temperatures are generated on the exhaust system. Do not remove the heat shields installed adjacent to it, and never apply undercoating to them. When driving, standing at idle and while parking take care to avoid possible contact between the hot exhaust system and any highly flammable materials such as hay, leaves, grass, etc. Such contact could lead to a fire, and with it the risk of serious property damage as well as personal injury. Do not touch hot exhaust tail pipes. Otherwise there is a risk of burns.◀

Hydroplaning

When driving on wet or slushy roads, reduce road speed. If you do not, a wedge of water can form between tires and road surface. This phenomenon is referred to as hydroplaning, and is characterized by a partial or complete loss of contact between the tires and the road surface, ultimately undermining your ability to steer and brake the vehicle.◀

The risk of hydroplaning increases as the tread depth of the tires decreases, refer also to Minimum tire tread on page 189.

Driving through water

Do not drive through water on the road if it is deeper than 1 ft/30 cm, and then only at walking speed at the most. Otherwise, the vehicle's engine, the electrical systems and the transmission may be damaged.◀

Braking safely

Your BMW is equipped with ABS as a standard feature. In situations that require it, it is best to brake with full force. Since the vehicle maintains steering responsiveness, you can still avoid possible obstacles with a minimum of steering effort.

The pulsing of he brake pedal indicates that the ABS is controlling braking.

In certain braking situations the perforated brake rotors can cause operating noises which, however, have not effect on the performance and operating safety of the brake system.

Do not drive with your foot resting on the brake pedal. Even light but consistent pedal pressure can lead to high temperatures, brake wear and possibly even brake failure.◀

Driving in wet conditions

When roads are wet or there is heavy rain, briefly exert gentle pressure on the brake pedal every few miles. Monitor traffic conditions to ensure that this maneuver does not endanger other road users. The heat generated in this process helps dry the pads and rotors to ensure that full braking efficiency will then be available when you need it.

Hills

To prevent overheating and thus reduced efficiency of the brake system, downshift to a gear in which only minimal brake applications are needed when descending long or steep downhill stretches. Even light but consistent pressure on the brake can lead to high temperatures, brake wear and possibly even brake failure.◀

Sequential Manual Transmission: do not drive in idle or with the engine switched off, otherwise there will be no engine braking action or support of the braking force and steering.
Manual transmission: do not drive with the clutch depressed, in idle or with the engine switched off, otherwise there will be no engine braking action or support of the braking force and steering.
Never allow floor mats, carpets or any other objects to protrude into the area of movement of the pedals and impair their operation.◀

Corrosion on brake rotors

When the vehicle is driven only occasionally, during extended periods when the vehicle is not used at all, and in operating conditions where brake applications are less frequent, there is an increased tendency for corrosion to form on rotors, while contaminants accumulate on the brake pads. This occurs because the minimum pressure which must be exerted by the pads

CarManuals2.com

during brake applications to clean the rotors is not reached.

This can also lead to long-lasting decreases in comfort and squeaking noise during braking. These decreases in comfort can also be produced by long braking maneuvers with a low pedal pressure.

Should corrosion form on the brake rotors, the brakes will tend to respond with a pulsating effect that even extended application will fail to cure.

For technical information about the brake system, refer to page 112.

When vehicle is parked

Condensation forms in the air conditioner system during operation, and then exits under the vehicle. Traces of condensed water under the vehicle are therefore normal.

Cargo loading

⚠ To avoid loading the tires beyond their approved carrying capacity, never overload the vehicle. Overloading can lead to overheating and increases the rate at which damage develops inside the tires. The ultimate result can assume the form of a sudden blowout.◀

⚠ Make sure that no fluids leak in the cargo area; otherwise the vehicle could be damaged.◀

Determining loading limit

1. Locate the following statement on your vehicle's placard*:

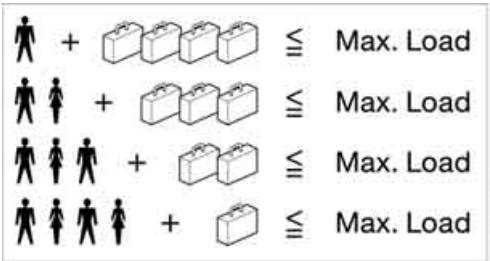
   ⚠ The combined weight of occupants and cargo should never exceed XXX lbs. or YYY kg, as otherwise the vehicle may be damaged and unstable driving conditions may result.◀

2. Determine the combined weight of the driver and passengers that will be riding in your vehicle.
3. Subtract the combined weight of the driver and passengers from XXX lbs. or YYY kg.
4. The resulting figure equals the available amount of cargo and luggage load capacity. For example, if the XXX amount equals 800 lbs. and there will be four 150-lb. passengers in your vehicle, the amount of available cargo and luggage load capacity is 200 lbs.:
   800 lbs. minus 600 lbs. = 200 lbs.
5. Determine the combined weight of luggage and cargo being loaded on the vehicle. That weight may not safely exceed the available cargo and luggage load capacity calculated in step 4.
6. If your vehicle will be towing a trailer, part of the load from your trailer will be transferred to your vehicle. Consult the manual for transporting a trailer to determine how this may reduce the available cargo and luggage load capacity of your vehicle.

CarManuals2.com

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 602 735 - © 08/09 BMW AG

Load



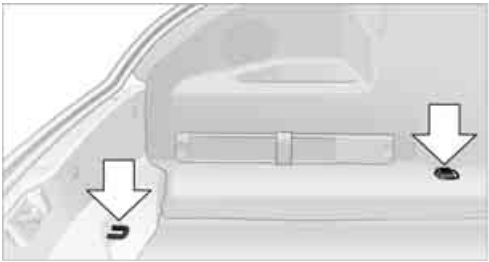
The permissible load is the total of the weight of occupants and cargo/luggage. The greater the weight of occupants, the less cargo/luggage can be transported.

Stowing cargo

CarManuals2.com

- ▷ Place heavy cargo as far forward and as low as possible, placing it directly behind the bulkhead behind the rear seats.
- ▷ Cover sharp edges and corners.

Securing cargo



- ▷ Use the luggage net* or securing straps to hold down small and lightweight luggage and cargo.
- ▷ Heavy-duty cargo straps* for securing larger and heavier objects are available at your BMW center. Four lashing eyes mounted in the cargo area are used to secure these heavy-duty cargo straps, refer to illustration.
- ▷ Please observe the special instructions supplied with the heavy-duty cargo straps.

⚠ Position and secure the cargo as described above, so that it cannot endanger the vehicle's occupants, for example if sudden braking or evasive maneuvers are necessary.
Never exceed either the approved gross vehicle weight or either of the approved axle loads, refer to page 223, as excessive loads can pose a safety hazard, and may also place you in violation of traffic safety laws.
You should never transport unsecured heavy or hard objects in the passenger compartment, as they could fly around and pose a safety hazard to the vehicle's occupants during abrupt braking or evasive maneuvers.
Use only the lashing eyes pictured to fasten the heavy-duty cargo straps. Do not secure cargo with the upper attachment points for LATCH, refer to page 53; otherwise, you could damage them.◀

Pad on base of luggage compartment

You can use the pad as needed, for example to transport soiled objects. The rubberized side is washable and has an anti-skid effect.

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 602 735 - © 08/09 BMW AG

BMW M6 Engineering

V10 High Output Engine

With a 305 cu in/5 liter displacement, the high-speed V10 engine generates a maximum output of 373 kW and a maximum torque of 383 lb ft/520 Nm. Its spontaneous response characteristics yield a very broad usable engine speed range. At the maximum engine speed of 8,250 rpm, the flow of fuel is interrupted in order to protect the engine. Due to the powerful engine dynamics, when the vehicle is at rest, the maximum engine speed is limited to 7,000 rpm.

CarManuals2.com

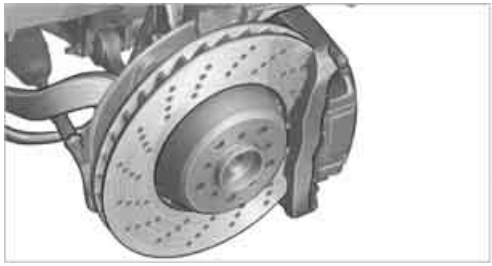
Warming up

The emissions control system causes the V10 high-output engine to have slightly rougher running characteristics during its warm-up phase.

When the engine is cold, the exhaust system has a slightly metallic undertone due to the system design.

For additional information on warming up, refer to Tachometer on page 65 and Engine oil temperature on page 66.

Compound brake



Your BMW M6 has a high-performance brake system with perforated compound brake rotors.

Due to the special structural features of these brake rotors, function noises occur during braking, but this has no effect on the performance, operating safety, and stability of the brakes.

Braking correctly

In order to keep the brake system in optimum condition, it is useful to put them under load at regular intervals in accordance with the nature of the vehicle.

Also refer to Corrosion on brake rotors on page 109.

Drivetrain

In your BMW M6, particular importance was attached to the direct connection of the engine to the drive system. Due to the torsionally rigid design of the drive train, the transmission of the torque is also audible, as is customary in a sports car. As a result, load shifts can be distinctly audible. This does not in any way impair the function or the service life of the components.

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 602 735 - © 08/09 BMW AG

CarManuals2.com

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 602 735 - © 08/09 BMW AG

CarManuals2.com

CarManuals2.com

Navigation

This chapter describes how you can enter destinations and specify your route so that your navigation system guides you reliably to your destination.

Navigation system*

General information

With the help of satellites, the navigation system is able to ascertain the precise position of the vehicle and guide you reliably to any destination you enter.

CarManuals2.com

Enter data only when the vehicle is stationary, and always give priority to the applicable traffic regulations in the event of any contradiction between traffic and road conditions and the instructions issued by the navigation system. Failure to take to this precaution can place you in violation of the law and put vehicle occupants and other road users in danger.◀

Navigation data

General information

Navigation data are stored in the vehicle and can be updated.

Navigation data and authorization codes are available from your BMW center.

Depending on the data volume, a data update may take several hours.

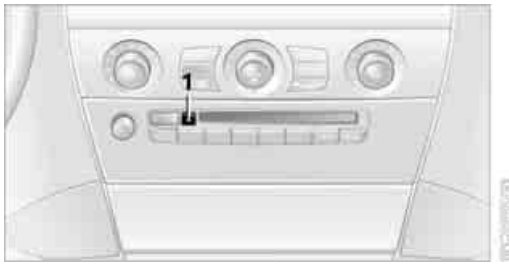
- ▷ The data are updated while you are driving.
- ▷ The update is resumed automatically when a trip is continued after an interruption.
- ▷ All functions are available during the trip.
- ▷ The data are stored in the vehicle.
- ▷ After the update, the system restarts.
- ▷ The medium that holds the navigation data can be removed after the update is completed.

Updating the navigation data

Inserting the navigation DVD

1. Insert the navigation DVD into the DVD player with the labeled side facing up.
2. Follow the instructions on the Control Display.
3. Enter the authorization code of the navigation DVD and change the DVD if needed.

Removing the navigation DVD



1. Press button **1**.
   The DVD emerges slightly from the drive.
2. Remove the DVD.

Displaying information on the version

1. "Navigation"
2. Open "Options".
3. "Navigation system version":
   Information is displayed on the data version.

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 602 735 - © 08/09 BMW AG

Destination entry

In entering your destination you can select from among the following options:

- ▷ Entering a destination manually, see below
- ▷ Selecting destination from address book, refer to page 119
- ▷ Last destinations, refer to page 120
- ▷ Special destinations, refer to page 120
- ▷ Entering a destination on the map, refer to page 122
- ▷ Selecting home address, refer to page 120
- ▷ Entering a destination by voice commands*, refer to page 123
- ▷ Destination entry via BMW Assist*, refer to page 121

You can also store a navigation destination on the programmable memory buttons, refer to page 20.

⚠ Enter data only when the vehicle is stationary, and always give priority to the applicable traffic regulations in the event of any contradiction between traffic and road conditions and the instructions issued by the navigation system. If you do not observe this precaution, you can endanger the vehicle occupants and other road users.◀

Entering a destination manually

The system's word-matching principle makes it easier for you to enter the names of streets or towns, refer to page 125. This allows you to enter different spellings and completes your entry automatically so that stored names can be called up quickly.

1. Press the **MENU** button.
2. "Navigation"
3. "Enter address"

The system also supports you with the following features:

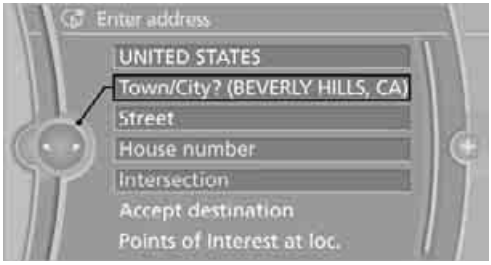
- ▷ If you do not enter a street, the system will guide you to the downtown area of a town/city.
- ▷ You can skip the entry of country and locality if the current entries should be retained for your new destination.

Entering a state/province

1. "Navigation"
2. "Enter address"
3. Select "State/Province" or the displayed state/province.

Entering a town/city

1. Select "Town/City/Postal Code" or the displayed town/city.



2. Select letters, if necessary.

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 602 735 - © 08/09 BMW AG

To delete letters:

▷ To delete individual letters:
Turn the controller to select |←, and then press the controller.

▷ To delete all letters:
Turn the controller to select |←, and then press the controller for an extended period.

CarManuals2.com

To enter spaces:

▷ Select the ␣ symbol.

The list gradually grows smaller each time you enter a new letter.

3. Move the controller to the right.
4. Select the name of the town/city from the list.

If there are several towns/cities with the same name:

1. Change to the list of town/city names.
2. Highlight the town/city: a preview map is displayed.
3. Select the town/city.

Entering the postal code

1. Select "Town/City/Postal Code" or the displayed town/city.
2. Select the 1@+ symbol.
3. Select the digits.
4. Change to the list of postal codes and towns/cities.
5. Highlight the postal code: a preview map is displayed.
6. Select the postal code.

Entering street and intersection

1. Select "Street" or the displayed street.
2. Enter a street and intersection as you would the town/city.

After the street you can also enter the intersection or the house number.

If there are several streets with the same name:

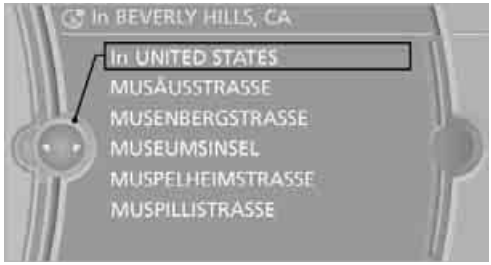
1. Change to the list of street names.
2. Highlight the street: a preview map is displayed.
3. Select the street.

Entering a street without a destination town/city

You can also enter a street without specifying a town/city. In this case all streets of the entered country are offered for selection. The related town/city is displayed after the street name.

If a town/city has already been entered, you can undo this entry. This may be practical if the desired street does not exist in the entered destination, because, for example, it belongs to another part of the town/city.

1. "Navigation"
2. "Enter address"
3. Select "Street" or the displayed street.
4. Change to the list of street names.
5. Select "In" with the country currently displayed.



6. Select the letters.
7. Change to the list of street names.
8. Highlight the street: a preview map is displayed.
9. Select the street.

Entering house number

You can enter any house number stored in the navigation data for the street.

1. "House number"
2. Select the digits.
3. Change to the list of house numbers.

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 602 735 - © 08/09 BMW AG

4. Select a house number or range of house numbers.

Starting destination guidance after entering the destination

1. "Accept destination"
2. "Start guidance" or "Add as another dest.".

▷ Set your "Route preference", refer to page 126.

▷ Search for "Points of Interest at loc.", refer to page 120.

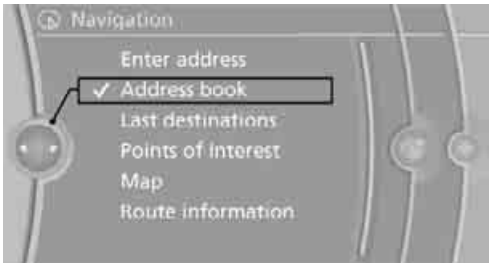
Address book

To create contacts, refer to page 174.

Selecting a destination from the address book

1. "Navigation"
2. "Address book"
   Contacts are displayed with addresses if these have been checked as destinations.

   If the contacts with addresses from the mobile phone are not displayed, they first need to be checked as destinations, refer to page 175.

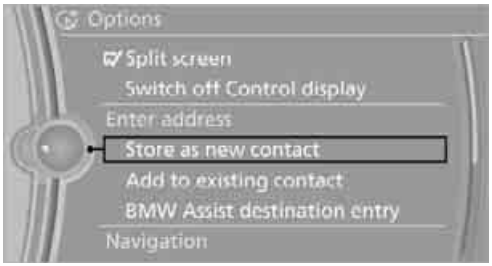


3. Select a contact from the list or, if necessary, using "A-Z search".
4. If necessary, select "Business address" or "Home address".

Storing a destination in the address book

Store the destination in the address book after entering the destination.

1. Open "Options".
2. "Store as new contact" or "Add to existing contact".



3. Select an existing contact, if available.
4. Select "Business address" or "Home address".
5. Enter "Last name" and, if necessary, "First name".
6. "Store in vehicle"

Storing the position

Your current position can be stored in the address book.

1. "Navigation"
2. Open "Options".
3. "Store position as contact" or "Add position to contact".

CarManuals2.com

4. Depending on the selection, select an existing contact from the list or the type of address and enter the last and first name.
5. "Store in vehicle"

Editing or deleting an address

1. "Navigation"
2. "Address book"

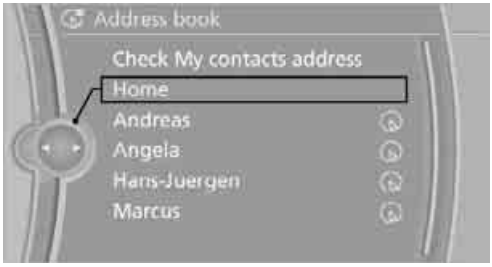
Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 602 735 - © 08/09 BMW AG

3. Highlight the entry.
4. Open "Options".
5. "Edit in Contacts" or "Delete entry".

Using home address as destination

The home address must be stored as a destination. Refer to Specifying a contact as the home address, page 174.

1. "Navigation"
2. "Address book"
3. "Home"



4. "Start guidance"

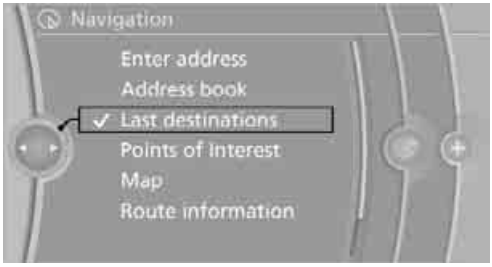
Last destinations

Manuals2.com

The last destinations are stored automatically. These destinations can be called up and used as a destination for destination guidance.

Opening the last destinations

1. "Navigation"
2. "Last destinations"



3. Select the destination.
4. "Start guidance"

Editing a destination

Destinations can be edited, for example, to change the house number of an existing entry.

1. "Navigation"
2. "Last destinations"
3. Highlight the destination.
4. Open "Options".
5. "Edit destination"

Deleting the last destinations

1. "Navigation"
2. "Last destinations"
3. Highlight the destination.
4. Open "Options".
5. "Delete entry" or "Delete all last destinations".

Special destinations

You can search for a special destination, e.g. a hotel or place of interest, and start destination guidance to this location.

The search can be narrowed by entering the location and type of special destination.

▷ The scope of information provided depends on the particular set of navigation data you are using.◀

Opening the search for special destinations

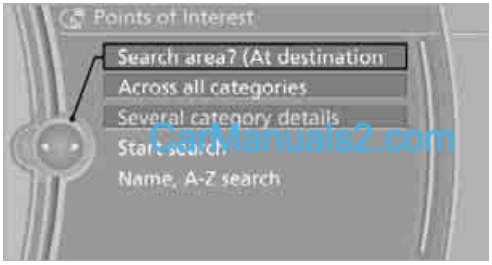
1. "Navigation"
2. "Points of Interest"

Special destination location

Search for a special destination according to its location relative to a locality or route.

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 602 735 - © 08/09 BMW AG

1. "Search area"



2. Select the location where the system is to search for the special destination:
   - ▷ "At current location"
   - ▷ "At destination"
   - ▷ "At a different destination"
   - ▷ "Along route"

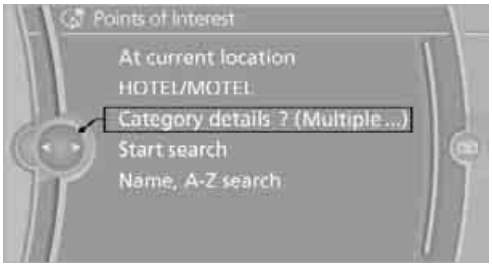
Special destination category

1. "Category"
2. Select "All" or a specific category, e.g. hotels or restaurants.

Category details

For some special destinations, additional details can be displayed that are available in the navigation data, e.g. Italian-style restaurant.

"Category details"



Starting the search for special destinations

1. "Start search"
2. A list of the special destinations is displayed.
   - ▷ "At current location"
     Special destinations are listed according to their distance from the current location and are displayed with a directional arrow pointing to the destination.
   - ▷ "At destination", "At a different destination", "Along route"
     Special destinations are listed according to their distance from the location where the search is being performed.
   - ▷ Destinations of the selected category are displayed in the map view as symbols. The view depends on the map scale and the category.
3. Highlight a special destination: the destination is displayed in the preview map.
4. Select the special destination.
5. Select the symbol.
6. "Start guidance" or "Add as another dest.".

   If a phone number is available, a connection can be established, if desired.

Destination entry via BMW Assist*

A connection is established to the BMW Concierge service, refer to page 177.

1. "Navigation"
2. "Enter address"
3. Open "Options".
4. "BMW Assist dest. entry"

Entering special destinations by name

1. "Navigation"
2. "Points of Interest"
3. "Name, A-Z search"
4. Enter the letters.
   Depending on the distance, the search may take some time. The list can contain a maximum of 100 entries.
5. Change to the list of special destinations.
6. Highlight a special destination: The destination is displayed in the preview map.
7. Select the special destination.
8. Select the symbol.
9. "Start guidance" or "Add as another dest.".

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 602 735 - © 08/09 BMW AG

Displaying special destinations in the map

To display symbols of the special destinations in the map:

1. "Navigation"
2. "Map"
3. Open "Options".
4. "Display Points of Interest"

5. Select the settings.

Entering the destination via the map

If you only know the location of the town or street, you can enter the destination using the map.

Opening the map

1. "Navigation"
2. "Map"

A map section is displayed on the Control Display. The map shows the current position of the vehicle.

Selecting the destination

1. Select the ⊕ symbol. The interactive map is started.

2. Select the destination with the cross-hairs.
   - ▷ To change the scale: turn the controller.
   - ▷ To shift the map: move the controller in the required direction.
   - ▷ To shift the map diagonally: move the controller in the required direction and turn it.
3. Press the controller to display additional menu items.
   - ▷ Select the symbol: "Start guidance" or "Add as another dest.".
   - ▷ "Return": return to the map view.
   - ▷ "Find points of interest": the search for special destinations is started.

Specifying the street

If the system cannot recognize a street, it displays a street name in the vicinity or the coordinates of the destination.

Interactive map

In the interactive map, the scale can be adjusted and the visible map section can be shifted. In

CarManuals2.com

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 602 735 - © 08/09 BMW AG

addition, pressing the controller makes further functions available:

- ▷ Select a symbol and "Start guidance", if necessary.
- ▷ "Exit interactive map"
- ▷ Map display
- ▷ "Display destination"
  The map section around the destination is displayed.
- ▷ "Display current location"
  The map section around your current location is displayed.
- ▷ "Find points of interest", refer to page 120.

Entering a destination by voice commands*

General information

You can enter a desired destination via the voice activation system. When entering the destination, it is possible to change between voice command and iDrive at any time. Reactivate the voice activation function for this purpose if necessary.

▷ You can have the possible commands read aloud via ›Voice commands‹.◀

Saying the entries

- ▷ Countries, towns and cities, streets and intersections can be said as whole words or spelled in the system language, refer to page 73.

  Example: to enter a destination in a US state as a complete word, the system language must be English.
- ▷ The town/city, street and house number can be said as a single sentence.*
- ▷ Spell the entry if the language region and the system language differ.
- ▷ Say the letters smoothly, and avoid exaggerating the pronunciation and inserting lengthy pauses between the letters.

Entering an address*

1. Press the button on the steering wheel.
2. ›Enter address‹
3. Wait for a request from the system.
4. Say the town or city, street and house number in a single sentence.
5. Continue making the entry as prompted by the system.
6. If necessary, individually name the separate components of the address, e.g. the town/city.

Entering a town/city

The town/city can be spelled or entered as a complete word*.

▷ The methods of entry depend on the navigation data in use and the country and language settings.◀

1. ›City‹ or ›Spell city‹.
2. Wait for the system to prompt you for the town/city.
3. Say the name of the town/city, or name at least the first three letters.

   Depending on the entry, up to 20 towns/cities may be suggested.
4. Select town/city:
   - ▷ Select a recommended town/city: ›Yes‹
   - ▷ Select other town/city: ›New entry‹
   - ▷ Select an entry, e.g. ›Entry 2‹
   - ▷ Spell an entry: ›Spell city‹

CarManuals2.com

Identical-sounding towns/cities that cannot be distinguished by the system are compiled in a separate list and shown as a town/city followed by three dots.
If necessary, select this entry with ›Yes‹. Then select the desired town/city from this list.◀

The town/city can also be selected from the list via iDrive: Turn the controller until the town/city is selected and press the controller.

Entering a street or intersection

The street or intersection is entered in the same manner as the town/city.

Entering a house number

You can enter house numbers up to 999:

1. ›House number‹
2. Say the house number.
3. ›Yes‹ to confirm the house number.
4. ›Accept destination‹

Starting destination guidance

›Start guidance‹

Destination guidance starts immediately.

Adding further intermediate destinations

›Add as another destination‹

Further intermediate destinations can be added.

Saving a destination

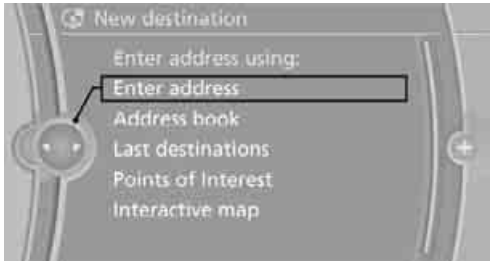
The destination is automatically added to the list of last destinations.

Planning a trip

New trip

Various intermediate destinations can be entered for a trip.

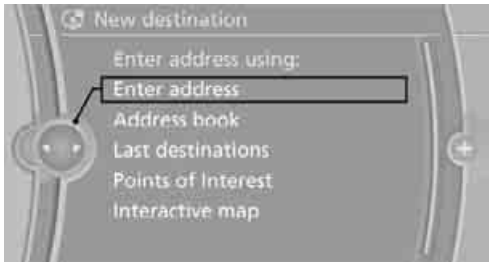
1. "Navigation"
2. "Map"
3. Move the controller to the left, if necessary.
4. Select the symbol.
5. "Enter new destination"
6. Select the type of destination entry and enter the intermediate destination.



Entering further intermediate destinations

A maximum of 30 intermediate destinations can be entered for one trip.

1. "Enter new destination"
2. Select the type of destination entry and enter the intermediate destination.



3. Select "Add as another dest.".
4. Select the location where the intermediate destination is to be inserted.

Starting the trip

After all intermediate destinations have been entered:
"Start guidance"

Storing a trip

Up to 30 created trips can be stored in the trip list.

1. Open "Options".
2. "Store trip"

CarManuals2.com

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 602 735 - © 08/09 BMW AG

3. Enter the letters.
4. "OK"

The trip is stored in the trip list under the entered name.

Starting a stored trip

1. "Navigation"
2. "Stored trips"
3. Select the desired trip.
4. "Start guidance"

Changing trips

Changing the trip direction

Intermediate destinations can be displayed in reverse order after destination guidance is started.

1. "Map"
2. "Guidance"
3. Open "Options".
4. "Reverse order of trip dest."

Rearranging the intermediate destinations

1. "Map"
2. "Guidance"
3. "Display all trip dest."
4. Select an intermediate destination.
5. "Reposition dest. in the trip"

Deleting an intermediate destination

1. "Map"
2. "Guidance"
3. "Display all trip dest."
4. Select an intermediate destination.
5. "Delete dest. in the trip"

Deleting a trip

1. "Navigation"
2. "Stored trips"
3. Select the desired trip.
4. Open "Options".
5. "Delete all trips" or "Delete trip".

Word-matching principle

The system supports the word matching principle to make it easier for you to enter the names of streets or towns. The system runs ongoing checks, comparing your destination entries with the data stored in the vehicle as the basis for instant response. The user benefits include:

- ▷ Names of specific locations can also vary from the official versions if you are using a spelling that is customary in another country.

  Example:

  Instead of the German spelling "München" you can also enter the English spelling "Munich" or the Italian spelling "Monaco".
- ▷ When you are entering the names of towns and streets the system will complete them automatically as soon as enough letters are available to ensure unambiguous identification.
- ▷ The system offers only those letters for selection of name entries that are stored in the vehicle. The system will not accept non existent names and addresses.

CarManuals2.com

Destination guidance

Starting destination guidance

1. "Navigation"
2. "Enter address"
3. Select the destination.
4. "Accept destination"
5. "Start guidance"

The route is displayed on the Control Display after it is calculated.

Terminating destination guidance

1. "Navigation"
2. "Map"
3. Select the symbol.
4. "Stop guidance"

Continuing destination guidance

If the destination was not reached during the last trip, destination guidance can be resumed.

"Resume guidance"

Route criteria

General information

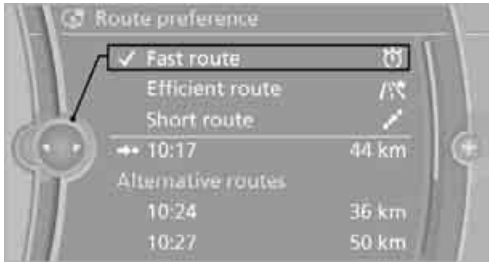
You can influence the calculated route by choosing certain route criteria. You can change the route criteria as often as you like while entering the destination and whenever the destination guidance is active.

The route is planned according to fixed rules. The type of road is taken into account, e.g. whether it is a highway or a winding road. As a result, the routes recommended by the navigation system may not always be the same ones that you would choose based on personal experience.

The settings are stored for the remote control currently in use.

Changing route criteria

1. "Navigation"
2. "Map"
3. "Route preference"
4. Selecting a criterion:
   - ▷ "Fast route": time-optimized route, which is a combination of the shortest possible route and the fastest roads
   - ▷ "Efficient route": optimized combination of the fastest and shortest roads
   - ▷ "Short route": short distance, irrespective of how fast or slow progress will be
   - ▷ "Alternative routes": other suggested alternative routes while destination guidance is active



5. Select additional route criteria, if desired. Where possible, the selected criteria will be avoided on the route.
   - ▷ Avoid highways where possible: "Avoid highways"
   - ▷ Avoid toll roads where possible: "Avoid toll roads"
   - ▷ Avoid ferries where possible: "Avoid ferries"

CarManuals2.com

The setting applies to the current route and to the planning of future routes.

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 602 735 - © 08/09 BMW AG

Dynamic destination guidance

"Dynamic guidance" is switched on:
The route is automatically changed in the event of traffic obstructions. The system does not point out traffic obstructions along the original route.

Depending on the type of road and the nature and length of the traffic obstruction, the route can also be calculated so that you travel through the traffic obstruction.

1. "Navigation"
2. Open "Options".
3. "Dynamic guidance"

▷ If the "Avoid highways", "Avoid toll roads" or "Avoid ferries" route criteria are selected, route calculation may take considerably longer.◀

Route

General information

Depending on the equipment in your vehicle, different views of the route are available during destination guidance:

- ▷ List of streets and towns/cities
- ▷ Map view, refer to page 128
- ▷ Arrow view in the Head-up Display*

Displaying a list of the streets or towns/cities on the route

When destination guidance is started, a list of the streets and towns/cities on the route is displayed. The driving distances and traffic bulletins are displayed for each route section.

1. "Navigation"
2. "Route information"
3. Highlight a section.

The section is displayed in the preview map.

Bypassing a section of the route

CarManuals2.com

During destination guidance, you can revise the navigation system's route recommendations to avoid particular stretches of road. Enter the number of miles/kilometers that you want to travel before returning to the original route.

1. "Navigation"
2. "Route information"
3. "New route for:"

4. Turn the controller: enter the desired number of miles.
5. Press the controller.

Resuming the original route

If the route section should no longer be bypassed:

1. "Navigation"
2. "Route information"
3. "Remove blocking"

Gas station recommendations

The remaining range is calculated and gas stations along the route are recommended.

1. "Navigation"
2. "Route information"
3. "Recommended refuel"
   A list of gas stations is displayed.
4. Select a gas station.
5. Select the symbol.
6. "Start guidance" or "Add as another dest.".

Destination guidance via voice instructions

Switching voice instructions on/off

Voice instructions can be switched on or off during destination guidance.

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 602 735 - © 08/09 BMW AG

1. "Navigation"
2. "Map"
3. Select the symbol.

Symbol	Meaning
	Voice instructions are switched on
	Voice instructions are switched off

For rapid access, the feature can be stored on a programmable memory key, refer to page 20.

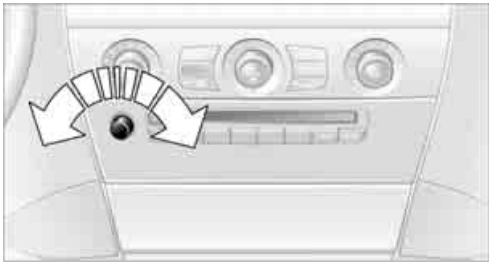
Repeating a voice instruction

1. "Navigation"
2. "Map"
3. Highlight the symbol.
4. Press the controller twice.

Adjusting the volume of voice instructions*

The volume can be adjusted only while a voice instruction is being issued.

1. Repeat the last voice instruction, if necessary.
2. Turn the knob during the voice instruction to select the desired volume.



The setting is stored for the remote control currently in use.

Map display

Displaying map view

You can have your current position displayed on a map. After starting the destination guidance, the planned route is shown on the map.

CarManuals2.com

1. "Navigation"
2. "Map"

The following functions are directly available in the map view:

Symbol	Function
	Starting/stopping destination guidance
	Switching voice instructions on/off
	Changing route criteria or selecting route alternatives
	Special destinations
	Displaying traffic bulletins
	Interactive map
N	Map view settings
	Changing scale

Information in the map view:

- ▷ Time, entertainment source, sound output, map orientation
- ▷ Distance from destination, estimated time of arrival, if destination guidance is active.
- ▷ Any traffic obstructions are highlighted in color.

To show/hide information on the map:
Press the controller.

Viewing the map

1. Select the N symbol.
2. Select a setting:
   - ▷ "View facing north"
   - ▷ "View in dir. of travel"
   - ▷ "Perspective view"
   - ▷ "Arrow display"

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 602 735 - © 08/09 BMW AG

3. Press the controller.

Changing the map section

Select the interactive map.

▷ To shift the map: move the controller in the required direction.

CarManuals2.com

▷ To shift the map diagonally: move the controller in the required direction and turn it.

Changing the scale

1. Select the symbol.
2. Turn the controller to adjust the scale.

Automatic scaling of the map

In the map view facing north, turn the controller in any direction until AUTO is displayed as the map scale.
The map shows the entire range from your location to the destination.

Settings for the map view

The map is shown on the Control Display.

1. Open "Options".
2. "Settings"
3. Set the optimized map view.
   - ▷ "Day/night mode"
     Select and create the necessary settings depending on the light conditions. When the traffic bulletin map is activated, this setting is disregarded.
   - ▷ "Satellite images"
     Satellite images* are displayed depending on availability and resolution.
   - ▷ "Perspective view in 3D"
     Displays a spatial view. Prominent areas that are contained in the navigation data are displayed on the map in 3D.
   - ▷ "Traffic Info map"
     The map is optimized for displaying traffic bulletins. Symbols for the special destinations are no longer displayed.

Map view for the split screen display

The map view for the split screen can be selected separately from the main screen.

1. Open "Options".
2. "Split screen"
   The split screen is switched on.
3. Move the controller to the right repeatedly until the split screen content is selected.
4. Select the map view:
   - ▷ "Arrow display"
   - ▷ "Map facing north"
   - ▷ "Map direction of travel"
   - ▷ "Map view with perspective"
   - ▷ "Exit ramp view"

Changing the scale

1. Move the controller to the right until the split screen is selected.
2. Turn the controller.

Traffic information*

You can display the traffic bulletins from radio stations that broadcast the TMC (Traffic Message Channel) of a traffic information service. This information from the traffic information service is continuously updated on the basis of measurement data from traffic control centers and information on traffic congestion.
During destination guidance, traffic bulletins that are relevant to areas along the route are automatically displayed and taken into account in the route planning. You can open all traffic bulletins manually via iDrive.

The traffic bulletins are shown in the map view.

Real Time Traffic Information End-User Provisions

Certain BMW models equipped with navigation have the capability to display real-time traffic information. If your system has this capability the following additional terms and conditions apply:

An End-User shall no longer have the right to use the Traffic Data in the event that the End-User is in material breach of the terms and conditions contained herein.

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 602 735 - © 08/09 BMW AG

A. Total Traffic Network, a division of Clear Channel Broadcasting, Inc. ("Total Traffic Network") holds the rights to the traffic incident data and RDS-TMC network through which it is delivered. You may not modify, copy, scan or use any other method to reproduce, duplicate, republish, transmit or distribute in any way any portion of traffic incident data. You agree to indemnify, defend and hold harmless BMW of North America, LLC. ("BMW NA") and Total Traffic Network, Inrix, Inc (and their affiliates) against any and all claims, damages, costs or other expenses that arise directly or indirectly out of (a) your unauthorized use of the traffic incident data or the RDS-TMC network, (b) your violation of this directive and/or (c) any unauthorized or unlawful activities by you in connection herewith.

B. Total Traffic Network traffic data is informational only. User assumes all risk of use. Total Traffic Network, BMW NA, and their suppliers make no representations about content, traffic and road conditions, route usability, or speed.

C. The licensed material is provided to license "as is," and "where is". Total Traffic Network, including, but not limited to, any and all third party providers of any of the licensed material, expressly disclaims, to the fullest extent permitted by law, all warranties or representations with respect to the licensed material (including, without limitation, that the licensed material will be error-free, will operate without interruption or that the traffic data will be accurate), express, implied or statutory, including, without limitation, the implied warranties of merchantability, non-infringement fitness for a particular purpose, or those arising from a course of dealing or usage of trade.

D. Neither Total Traffic Network, Inrix, Inc. nor BMW NA will be liable to you for any indirect, special, consequential, exemplary, or incidental damages (including, without limitation, lost revenues, anticipated revenues, or profits relating to the same) arising from any claim relating directly or indirectly to use of the traffic data, and even if Total Traffic Network, Inrix, Inc., or BMW NA are aware of the possibility of such damages. These limitations apply to all claims, including, without limitation, claims in contract and tort (such as negligence, product liability and strict liability). Some states do not allow the exclusion or limitation of incidental or consequential damages, so those particular limitations may not apply to you.

Activating/deactivating reception

1. "Navigation"
2. Open "Options".
3. Activate/deactivate "Receive Traffic Info".

In many metropolitan areas you can receive traffic information broadcast by radio stations. The traffic conditions are monitored by traffic management centers and the traffic information is periodically updated.
During destination guidance, the traffic information relevant to your planned route is automatically displayed. Whether destination guidance is active or not, you can have the traffic bulletins displayed in the map view or in the traffic info list.

Traffic bulletins in a list

A list of the traffic bulletins can be opened via the menu or map view.

CarManuals2.com

Opening the traffic bulletins

1. "Navigation"
2. "Map"
3. Move the controller to the left, if necessary.
4. Select the ⚠ symbol: "Traffic Info"
   First, the traffic bulletins on the planned route are displayed. The traffic bulletins are sorted in the order of their distance from the current vehicle position.
5. Select a traffic bulletin.

Additional information can be displayed for some traffic bulletins:

1. Select the symbol.
2. Additional information is displayed.
3. Exit from the menu:
   Move the controller to the left.

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 602 735 - © 08/09 BMW AG

Traffic bulletins on the map

When the traffic bulletin map is activated, the Control Display changes to a black and white display. This enables a better view of the traffic bulletins. The day/night mode is disregarded in this setting. The symbols for the special destinations are no longer displayed.

CarManuals2.com

1. "Navigation"
2. "Map"
3. Open "Options".
4. "Settings"
5. "Traffic Info map"

Symbols in the map view

Depending on the scale of the map and the location of the traffic obstruction along the route, the symbols for the traffic obstructions are displayed.

Additional information in the map view

Depending on the map scale, a traffic obstruction's length, direction and impact are displayed on the map using triangles or gray bars along the calculated route.

Filtering of traffic bulletins

You can filter which traffic bulletins are to be displayed by the system:

1. "Navigation"
2. "Map"
3. Open "Options".
4. "Traffic Info categories"
5. Select the desired categories.

Traffic bulletins of the selected categories are displayed.

- ▷ Traffic bulletins on incidents along the route are always displayed.
- ▷ For your own safety, traffic bulletins that notify you of potentially dangerous situations, such as wrong-way drivers, cannot be hidden.

Traffic bulletins during destination guidance

System response will vary depending on whether or not "Dynamic guidance" is selected, refer to page 127.

During destination guidance, traffic obstructions on the route are taken into consideration.

Information on sources of great danger, such as wrong-way drivers, is displayed regardless of the setting.

Displaying traffic obstructions

When the navigation system receives a traffic obstruction message and "Dynamic guidance" is not selected, you will be shown certain information, such as the length of the traffic congestion, when you are approx. 30 miles/50 km away from the traffic obstruction.
The last possible detour exit is indicated just before you reach it.

This information is displayed even if you have called up another application on the Control Display.

Selecting a detour

Select the symbol: "Detour".

"Dynamic guidance" is activated for the current destination guidance.

Dynamic route planning

When "Dynamic guidance" is selected, the route will be changed automatically in the event of a traffic obstruction. The system will not point out traffic obstructions on the original route. Depending on the road type and the kind and extent of the traffic obstruction, the newly calculated route may lead through the traffic obstruction.

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 602 735 - © 08/09 BMW AG

What to do if...

What to do if...

- The current position cannot be displayed?
  The position is in an unrecognized region, in a poor reception area, or the system is in the process of determining the position. Reception is best when you have an unobstructed view to the sky.
- The destination guidance does not accept an address without the street name?
  A downtown area cannot be determined for the town or city that has been entered. Input any street in the selected town/city and start destination guidance.
- The destination guidance does not accept a destination?
  The destination data is not contained in the navigation data. Select a destination that is as close as possible to the original.
- The letters for a destination cannot be selected during destination entry?
  The stored data do not contain the data of the destination. Select a destination that is as close as possible to the original.
- The map view is displayed in black and white?
  When the traffic bulletin map is activated, the Control Display changes to a black and white display. This enables a better view of the traffic bulletins.
- Voice instructions are no longer issued before intersections during destination guidance?
  The area has not yet been fully recorded, or you have left the recommended route and the system requires a few seconds to calculate a new route suggestion.

CarManuals2.com

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 602 735 - © 08/09 BMW AG

CarManuals2.com

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 602 735 - © 08/09 BMW AG

CarManuals2.com

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 602 735 - © 08/09 B

CarManuals2.com

Entertainment

This chapter describes how to operate the radio and CD player and how to create their tone settings.

On/off and tone

The following audio and video sources share the same control elements and adjustments:

- Radio
- CD/DVD player
- CD changer*
- Video*
- External devices, e.g. MP3 player

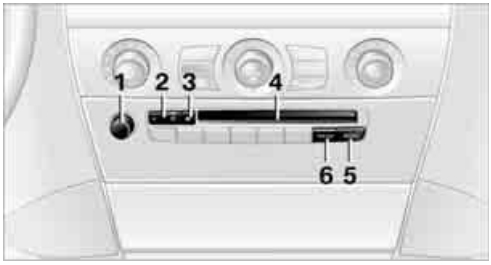
CarManuals2.com

Controls

The audio and video sources can be controlled using the:

- Buttons in the area of the CD/DVD player
- iDrive
- Buttons on the steering wheel, refer to page 11
- Programmable memory buttons, refer to page 20
- Voice activation system

Buttons in the area of the CD/DVD player



1 Entertainment sound output on/off, volume
   - Press: switch on/off
     When the system is switched on, the most recently selected radio station or track is played.
   - Turn: adjust volume

2 Station scan/track search
   - Change the radio station
   - Select the track for the CD/DVD player, CD changer and certain multimedia devices

3 Eject the CD/DVD

4 CD/DVD drive*

5 **MODE**: change the audio and video sources

6 **FM/AM:** change the radio station wave-band

Switching on/off

To switch the Entertainment sound output on and off:
Press knob **1** next to the CD/DVD player.

This symbol on the Control Display indicates that sound output is switched off.

Sound output is available for approx. 20 minutes after the ignition is switched off. Switch on the sound output again for this purpose.

Adjusting volume

Turn knob **1** next to the CD/DVD player until the desired volume is set.

You can also adjust the volume with the buttons on the steering wheel, refer to page 11.

Tone control

You can alter various tone settings, e.g. treble and bass or the speed-dependent volume increase.
The tone settings are set for all audio sources at once.

The settings are stored for the remote key currently in use.

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 602 735 - © 08/09 BMW AG

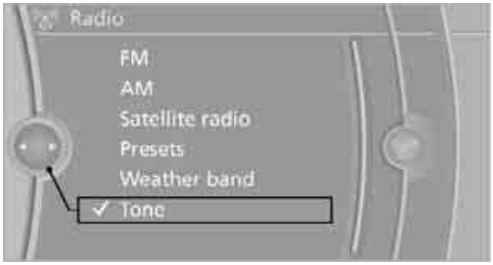
Treble, bass, balance, fader

▷ "Balance": left/right volume distribution

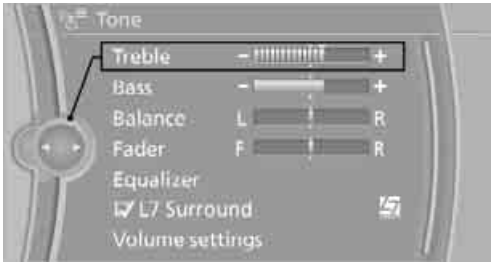
▷ "Fader": front/rear volume distribution

Adjustments

1. "CD/Multimedia", "Radio" or "Settings".
2. "Tone"



3. Select the desired tone setting.



4. To adjust: turn the controller.
5. To store: press the controller.

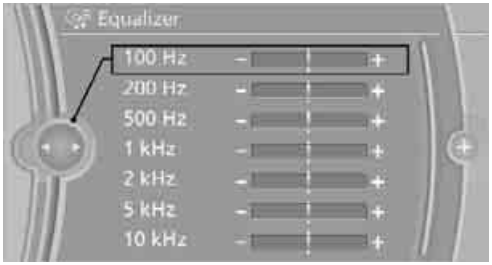
Equalizer*

You can set individual sound frequency ranges.

1. "CD/Multimedia", "Radio" or "Settings".
2. "Tone"
3. "Equalizer"

CarManuals2.com

4. Select the desired setting.

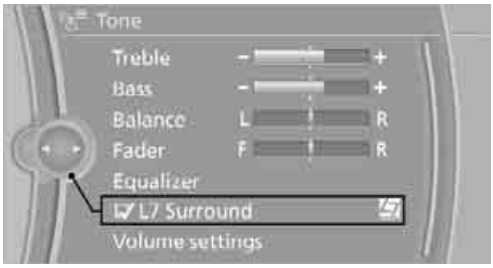


5. To adjust: turn the controller.
6. To store: press the controller.

Multi-channel playback, Surround*

You can select between stereo and multi-channel playback, Surround.

1. "CD/Multimedia", "Radio" or "Settings".
2. "Tone"
3. "L7 Surround"



Multi-channel playback, Surround, is simulated when playing back an audio track in stereo.

Surround is automatically activated or deactivated, depending on the audio track selected.

LOGIC7 and the LOGIC7 logo are registered trade marks of Lexicon, Inc., a company of the Harman International Group.

Volume

▷ "Speed volume": speed-dependent volume control

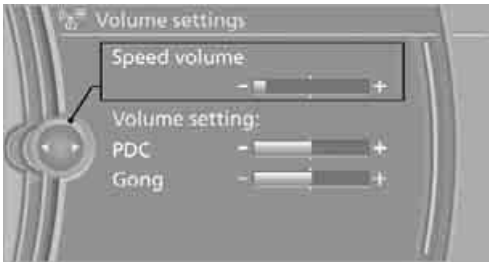
▷ "PDC"*: volume of the PDC signal tone relative to the entertainment sound output

▷ "Gong": volume of the signal tone, e.g. for the safety belt reminder, relative to the entertainment sound output

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 602 735 - © 08/09 BMW AG

Adjustments

1. "CD/Multimedia", "Radio" or "Settings".
2. "Tone"
3. "Volume settings"
4. Select the desired volume setting.



5. To adjust: turn the controller.
6. To store: press the controller.

Resetting tone settings

You can reset all tone settings to the default settings.

1. "CD/Multimedia", "Radio" or "Settings".
2. "Tone"
3. "Reset"

CarManuals2.com

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 602 735 - © 08/09 BMW AG

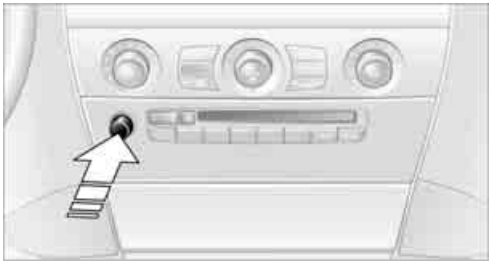
Radio

Your radio is designed for reception of the following stations:

- ▷ FM and AM
- ▷ HD Radio*
- ▷ Weather Band*
- ▷ Satellite radio*

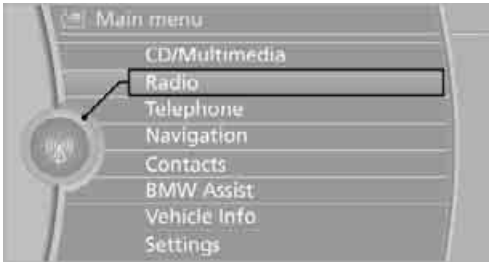
CarManuals2.com

Selecting a station

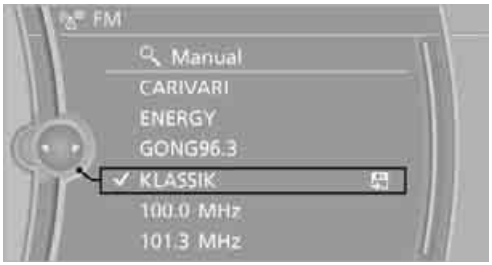


Press the knob if the sound output is switched off.

1. "Radio"



2. "FM" or "AM"
3. Select the desired station.



The selected station is stored for the remote control currently in use.

Changing stations

Turn and press the controller

or

Press the button for the corresponding direction

or

Press the buttons on the steering wheel, refer to page 11.

Selecting a station manually

Station selection using the frequency.

1. "Radio"
2. "FM" or "AM"
3. "Manual"
4. Select the frequency: turn the controller.

To store the station: Press the controller for an extended period.

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 602 735 - © 08/09 BMW AG

Storing stations

Via iDrive

1. "Radio"
2. "FM" or "AM"
3. Select the desired station.

4. Press the controller for an extended period.
5. Select the desired memory location.

The stations are stored for the remote control currently in use.

About programmable memory buttons

You can also store a station on the programmable memory buttons, refer to page 20.

1. Select a station.
2. 1 ... 6 Press the desired button for a longer period.

Radio Data System RDS*

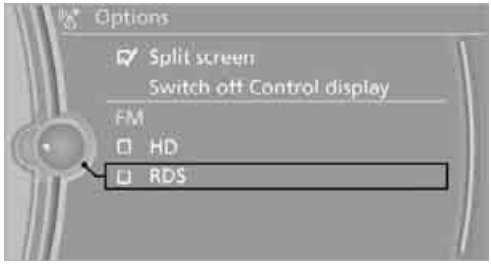
In the FM waveband, additional information is transmitted via RDS. If the reception conditions are good, the station names are shown on the Control Display. If the reception is weak or disrupted, it can take some time before the station names are displayed.

Switching RDS on/off

1. "Radio"
2. "FM"
3. Open "Options".

CarManuals2.com

4. "RDS"



The setting is stored for the remote control currently in use.

HD Radio*

Many stations broadcast both analog and digital signals. If a digital radio network is available, these stations can be received digitally and thus with better sound quality.

License conditions

HD Radio™ technology manufactured under license from iBiquity Digital Corp. U.S. and Foreign Patents. HD Radio™ and the HD and HD Radio logos are proprietary trademarks of iBiquity Digital Corp.

Activating/deactivating digital radio reception

1. "Radio"
2. "FM" or "AM"
3. Open "Options".
4. "HD Radio"

The setting is stored for the remote control currently in use.

HD This symbol is displayed when a station is being received digitally.

In areas in which the station is not continuously received in digital mode, the playback switches between analog and digital reception. Due to time delayed broadcasting, there may be repetitions or interruptions. In this case, switch off digital radio reception.

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 602 735 - © 08/09 BMW AG

Displaying additional information

Some stations broadcast additional information on the current track, such as the name of the artist.

1. Select the desired station.
2. Open "Options".
3. "Station info"

Selecting a substation

1. Select the desired station.
2. Press the controller.
3. Select the substation.

Presets

It is possible to store up to 40 stations.

Calling up a station

1. "Radio"
2. "Presets"
3. Select the desired station.

Storing a station

CarManuals2.com

The station currently selected is stored.

1. "Radio"
2. "Presets"
3. "Store station"

4. Select the desired memory location.

The list of stored stations is stored for the remote control currently in use.

The stations can also be stored on the programmable memory buttons, refer to page 20.

Deleting a station

1. "Radio"
2. "Presets"
3. Select the desired station.
4. Open "Options".
5. "Delete entry"

Weather Band*

Weather Radio is a service of the National Oceanic and Atmospheric Administration (NOAA) of the US Department of Trade. Weather news flashes are repeated every 4 to 6 minutes and are routinely updated at intervals of 1 to 3 hours, and more often when necessary. Most stations operate 24 hours a day. In case of a storm, the National Weather Service interrupts the routine weather news and transmits special warning messages instead. If you have a question about NOAA Weather Radio, please contact the nearest office of the National Weather Service. Details are also provided on the Internet at www.nws.noaa.gov.

Calling up weather news flashes

To operate via the iDrive:

1. Switch on the radio.
2. "Weather band"
3. Select the desired channel.

The station for weather news flashes may be unavailable in some regions.

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 602 735 - © 08/09 BMW AG

Satellite radio*

You can receive over 100 different channels with high sound quality.

The channels are offered to you in predefined packages. To receive the channels of your choice, you must have this package enabled.

CarManuals2.com

With this new technology the signal may fail, causing interruptions in reception.◀

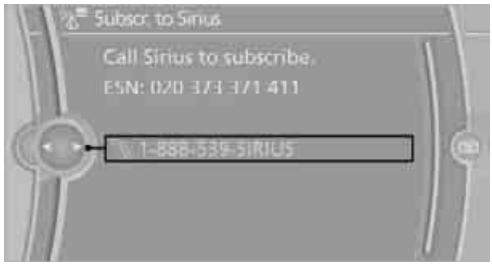
Enabling or disabling channels

Enabling channels

1. Ensure that reception is reliable. Reception is usually best when you have an unobstructed view to the sky.
2. "Radio"
3. "Satellite radio"
4. Open "All Channels" or the desired category.

5. Select the channel.

If the channel has not yet been enabled, then a phone number and the ESN electronic serial number are displayed.



6. Call the phone number to have the channel enabled.

The channels can be disabled again via this phone number.

Disabling channels

The channels can be disabled by phone. To do so, have the electronic serial number ESN ready.

1. "Radio"
2. "Satellite radio".
3. Open "All Channels" or the desired category.

4. Open "Options".
5. The electronic serial number is displayed.
6. Call Sirius to have the channel disabled.

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 602 735 - © 08/09 BMW AG

Selecting a channel

Selecting a channel

1. "Radio"
2. "Satellite radio"
3. Select "All Channels" or the desired category.

4. Select desired channel.

Storing a channel

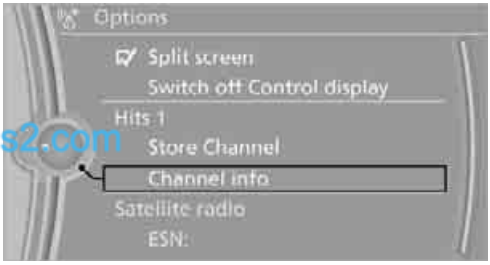
1. "Radio"
2. "Satellite radio"
3. Open "All Channels" or the desired category.
4. Open "Options".
5. "Store Channel"
6. Call up the desired memory location.

The channel is stored. The channels of the last selection criterion are displayed once again after a short time.

Displaying information about another channel

Information can be displayed about a channel that is not being played.

1. Highlight the channel about which you wish to display information.
2. Open "Options".
3. "Channel info"



Changing the channel using the button next to the CD/DVD drive

Press the button for the corresponding direction.
The system changes to the next enabled channel.

Notes

If no signal can be received for more than 4 seconds, a message is displayed on the Control Display.

Reception may not be possible for certain reasons, e.g. environmental influences or topographical conditions. The satellite radio has no influence on this.
The signal may not be available in tunnels or underground garages, next to tall buildings, near trees, mountains or other sources of radio interference.
Reception is usually possible again as soon as the signal is available again.◀

CarManuals2.com

CD/DVD player and CD changer*

CD/DVD playback

Inserting a CD/DVD

Insert the CD/DVD into the drive with the printed side up. The CD/DVD is drawn in automatically.
Playback starts automatically if the sound output is on. For CDs/DVDs with compressed audio files, it can take several minutes to read in the data, depending on the directory structure.

Playable formats

CD/DVD player

- ▷ DVD: DVD-ROM, DVD-R, DVD+R, DVD-RW, DVD+RW, DVD-R DL, DVD+R DL, DVD audio (video part only), DVD video
- ▷ CD: CD-ROM, CD-R, CD-RW, CD-DA, VCD, SVCD
- ▷ Compressed audio files: MP3, WMA, AAC

CD changer*

- ▷ CD: CD-ROM, CD-R, CD-RW, CD-DA

Starting playback

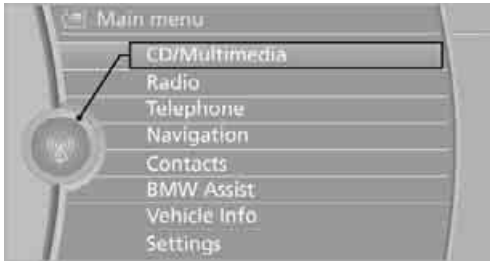
Via iDrive

Fill the CD/DVD magazine and insert it, refer to page 148.

CarManuals2.com

To start playback if a CD is already located in the player or changer:

1. "CD/Multimedia"



2. "CD/DVD"
3. Select the desired CD or DVD:

Ejecting the CD/DVD

Press the ⏏ button next to the CD/DVD player. The CD/DVD emerges slightly from the drive.

Symbol	Function
	CD/DVD player
1...6	CD changer

Audio playback

Selecting a track using the button

Press the ◀ ▶ button for the corresponding direction repeatedly until you reach the desired track.

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 602 735 - © 08/09 BMW AG

Selecting a track using iDrive

Audio CDs

1. "CD/Multimedia"
2. "CD/DVD"
3. Select the desired CD or DVD.
4. Select the desired track to begin playback.

CD/DVD with compressed audio files*

Depending on the data, some letters and numbers of the CD/DVD may not be displayed correctly.

1. "CD/Multimedia"
2. "CD/DVD"
3. Select the desired CD or DVD.
4. Select the directory, if necessary.
   To change to a higher level directory: Move the controller to the left.

5. Select the track and press the controller.

Displaying information about the track*

If information about a track has been stored, it is displayed automatically:

- ▷ Artist
- ▷ Album title
- ▷ Number of tracks on the CD/DVD
- ▷ Track file name

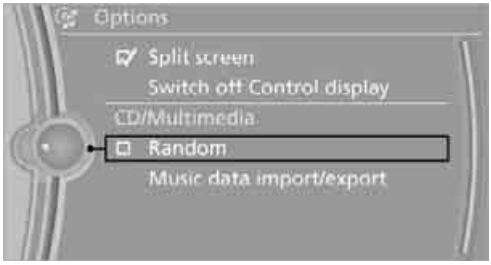
Random play sequence

The tracks on the current CD/DVD are played once in random sequence.

1. "CD/Multimedia"
2. "CD/DVD"
3. Select the desired CD or DVD.
4. Open "Options".

CarManuals2.com

5. "Random"



CDs/DVDs with compressed audio files: the directories and the tracks contained therein are played back in random sequence.

Random mode is switched off if the audio source is changed or the ignition is switched off.

Fast forward/reverse

Press and hold the button for the corresponding direction.

Automatic repeat*

Selected tracks, directories or CDs/DVDs are repeated automatically.

Video playback*

Country codes

Only DVDs with the code of the home region can be played back; also refer to the information on your DVD.

Code	Region
1	USA, Canada
2	Japan, Europe, Middle East, South Africa
3	Southeast Asia
4	Australia, Central and South America, New Zealand
5	Northwest Asia, North Africa
6	China
0	All regions

Starting playback

For your own safety, the video image is only displayed up to approx. 2 mph/3 km/h, and in some national-market versions only with the parking brake applied.

DVD video

1. "CD/Multimedia"
2. "CD/DVD"
3. Select a DVD with video content.
4. "DVD menu"

5. Start the DVD via the DVD menu.

VCD/SVCD

1. "CD/Multimedia"
2. "CD/DVD"
3. Select a CD/DVD with video content.
4. "Select track"

5. Select the desired track.

The CD/DVD is started.

CarManuals2.com

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 602 735 - © 08/09 BMW AG

Video menu

To open the Video menu:

1. Turn the controller during playback.
2. Press the controller when "Back" is displayed.

The Video menu is displayed:

Symbol	Function
DVD	Open the DVD menu*
▷	Start playback
❙❙	Pause
□	Stop
▷❙	Next chapter/next track
❙◁	Previous chapter/previous track
▷▷	Fast forward
◁◁	Reverse

In fast forward/reverse: the speed increases every time the controller is pressed. To stop, start playback.

DVD menu

1. If necessary, turn the controller to open the video menu.
2. DVD "DVD menu"
   The DVD menu is displayed. The display depends on the contents of the DVD.

▷ To select menu items: move and press the controller.

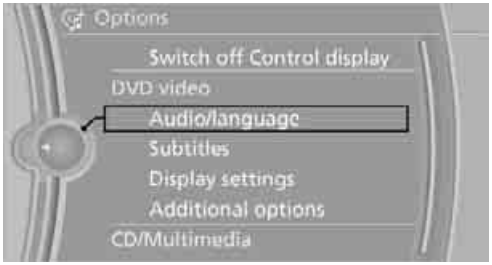
▷ To change to the Video menu: turn the controller and select "Back".

DVD/VCD settings

For some DVDs, settings can only be made via the DVD menu; refer also to the information on your DVD.

Language*

1. Turn the controller during playback.
2. Open "Options".
3. "Audio/language"



4. Select the desired language.

The languages that are available depend on the DVD.

Subtitles*

Subtitles can be selected if they are contained on the DVD.

1. Turn the controller during playback.
2. Open "Options".
3. "Subtitles"
4. Select the desired language or "Do not display subtitles".

CarManuals2.com

Brightness, contrast, color

1. Turn the controller during playback.
2. Open "Options".
3. "Display settings"

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 602 735 - © 08/09 BMW AG

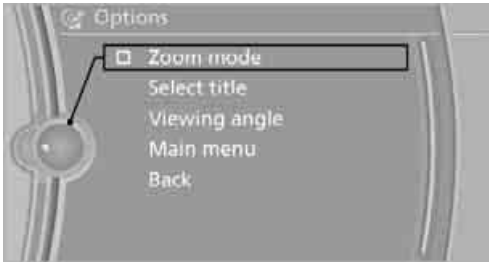
4. "Brightness", "Contrast" or "Color"

5. Turn the controller until the desired setting is displayed, and then press the controller.

Zoom

Display the video image on the full screen.

1. Turn the controller during playback.
2. Open "Options".
3. "Additional options"
4. "Zoom mode"



Selecting track

DVD video:

1. Turn the controller during playback.
2. Open "Options".
3. "Additional options"
4. "Select title"
5. Select the desired track.

VCD/SVCD:

1. ? "Select track"
2. Select the desired track.

Camera angle*

The camera angle depends on the DVD.

1. Turn the controller during playback.
2. Open "Options".
3. "Additional options"
4. "Viewing angle"
5. Select the desired camera angle.

Opening the main menu, back

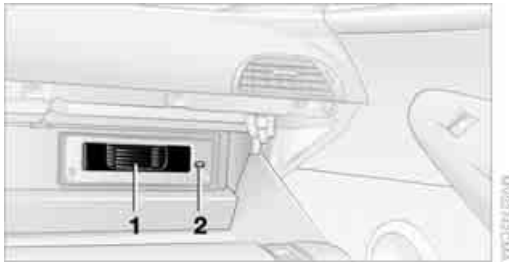
These functions are not contained on every DVD. Therefore, they may not be available for use.

CD changer*

The BMW CD changer for six CDs is installed in the glove compartment.

Removing CD magazine

To insert CDs into the CD magazine **1** or remove them from it, you must first remove the magazine from the CD changer:



Press button **2**: the CD magazine **1** slides out.

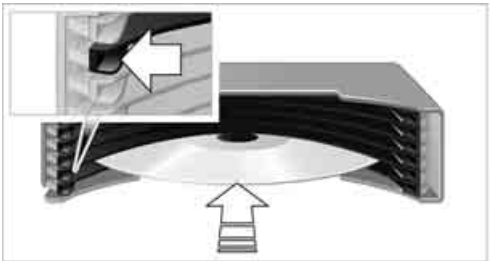
Wait at least 2 seconds before pushing in the magazine again so that the inserted CDs can be read in again.

Inserting/removing CDs into/from the CD magazine

When inserting or removing CDs, remember to hold them by their edges, taking care to avoid touching the data side with its reflective CD memory surface.

CarManuals2.com

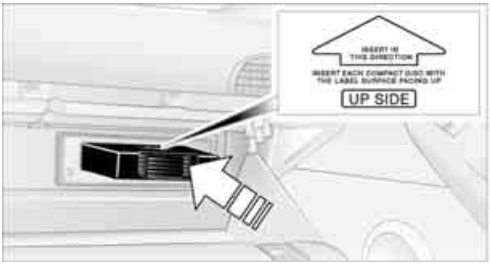
Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 602 735 - © 08/09 BMW AG



Inserting CDs:
Insert one CD into each compartment of the magazine with the labeled side up.

Removing CDs:
Pull out the desired tray and remove the CD.

Inserting CD magazine



Push in the CD magazine as far as possible in the direction of the arrow.

The CD changer reads in the loaded CDs and is then ready for operation.

Notes

BMW CD/DVD players and changers are officially designated Class 1 laser products. Do not operate if the cover is damaged, otherwise severe eye damage can result.

Do not use self-recorded CDs/DVDs with labels applied as these can become detached during playback due to heat buildup and can cause irreparable damage to the device.
Only use round CDs/DVDs with a standard diameter of 4.7 in/12 cm and do not play CDs/DVDs with an adapter, e.g. Single-CDs, otherwise the CDs or the adapter may jam and no longer eject.
Do not use a combined CD/DVD, e.g. DVD^{Plus}, otherwise the CD/DVD may jam and no longer eject.◀

General malfunctions

BMW CD/DVD changers and players have been optimized for performance in vehicles. In some instances they may be more sensitive to faulty CDs/DVDs than stationary devices would be.

If a CD/DVD cannot be played, first check whether it has been inserted correctly.

Humidity

High levels of humidity can lead to condensation on the CD/DVD or the laser's scan lens and temporarily prevent playback.

CarManuals2.com

Malfunctions with individual CDs/DVDs

If malfunctions occur only with particular CDs/DVDs, this may be due to one of the following reasons.

Self-recorded CDs/DVDs

Possible reasons for malfunctions with self-recorded CDs/DVDs are inconsistent data-creation or recording processes, or poor quality or old age of the CD/DVD blank.

Only label CDs/DVDs on the upper side with a pen intended for this purpose.

Damage

Avoid fingerprints, dust, scratches and moisture.
Store CDs/DVDs in a sleeve.
Do not subject CDs/DVDs to temperatures over 122 °F /50 °C, high levels of humidity or direct sunlight.

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 602 735 - © 08/09 BMW AG

CDs/DVDs with copy protection

CDs/DVDs are often provided with a copy protection feature by the manufacturer. This can mean that some CDs/DVDs cannot be played or can only be played to a limited extent.

MACROVISION

This product contains copyrighted technology that is based on multiple registered US patents and the intellectual property of the Macrovision Corporation and other manufacturers. The use of this copy protection must be approved by Macrovision. Media protected by this product - unless otherwise agreed with Macrovision - may only be used for private purposes. Copying of this technology is prohibited.

CarManuals2.com

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 602 735 - © 08/09 BMW AG

Music collection

Storing music

Music tracks from CDs, DVDs and USB devices can be stored in the music collection in the vehicle and played from there.

▷ Audio CD: tracks are converted into a compressed audio format when they are stored. If available, information on the album, such as the artist, is stored as well.

▷ CD/DVD or USB device with compressed audio files: the entire content of the CD/DVD or the USB device is stored in the vehicle as an album. After storing, the tracks and directories can be deleted individually. Files are only stored in the WMA, MP3, and AAC formats.
Tracks with DRM copy protection can be stored in the vehicle but cannot be played back.

⚠ Regularly back up the music data; otherwise, it could be lost if there is a fault on the hard disc.◀

CarManuals2.com

Music recognition technology and related data are provided by Gracenote®. Gracenote® is the industry standard in music recognition technology and related content delivery. For more information, please visit www.gracenote.com.

CD and music-related data from Gracenote, Inc., copyright © 2000-2009 Gracenote. Gracenote Software copyright 2000-2009 Gracenote. This product and service may practice one or more of the following U.S. Patents: #5,987,525; #6,061,680; #6,154,773, #6,161,132, #6,230,192, #6,230,207, #6,240,459, #6,330,593, and other patents issued or pending. Some services supplied under license from Open Globe, Inc., for U.S. Patent: #6,304,523.

Gracenote and CDDB are registered trade marks of Gracenote. The Gracenote logo, the logo typeface and the "powered by Gracenote" logo are trade marks of Gracenote.

Storing from CDs/DVDs

Data can only be stored from CDs/DVDs on the CD/DVD player.

1. Insert the CD/DVD into the CD/DVD player.
2. "CD/Multimedia"
3. "CD/DVD"
4. Select the symbol for the CD/DVD player.
5. "Store in vehicle"

The music collection is displayed.
The tracks are stored and played back in sequence out of the music collection.

Observe the following during the storage process:
Do not switch back to the CD/DVD player and do not remove the CD/DVD from the CD/DVD player as this will interrupt the storage process. You can switch to the other audio sources without interrupting the storage process. Tracks from the current CD/DVD that have already been stored can also be called up.

Interrupting storage

1. "CD/Multimedia"
2. "CD/DVD"

3. "Storing..."

4. "Cancel storing"

The storage process is interrupted and can be continued at any time.

Continuing the storage process

1. "CD/Multimedia"
2. "CD/DVD"
3. Select the symbol for the CD/DVD player.
4. "Continue storing"

Storage of the CD continues at the beginning of the track at which storage was interrupted.

Album information

During storage, information such as the name of the artist is stored with the track, if this information is available in the vehicle database or on the CD.

To update the database, contact your service center.

Storing from a USB device

To store music, a suitable device must be connected to the USB interface in the glove compartment.

▷ Suitable devices: USB mass storage devices, such as USB flash drives or MP3 players with a USB interface.

▷ Unsuitable devices: USB hard discs, USB hubs, USB memory card readers with multiple inserts, Apple iPod/iPhone.

▷ Data can only be stored from a USB device via the USB interface in the glove compartment.◀

1. Connect the USB device to the USB interface in the glove compartment.
2. "CD/Multimedia"
3. "Music collection"
4. Open "Options".
5. "Music data import/export"
6. "Import music (USB)"

Music, playing

Music search

All tracks for which additional information has been stored can be accessed by the music search. Tracks without additional information can be called up via the corresponding album.

1. "CD/Multimedia"
2. "Music collection"
3. "Music search"

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 602 735 - © 08/09 BMW AG

4. Select the desired category.

5. To select the desired entry:
   ▷ Open "A-Z search" and enter the desired entry.

   or

   ▷ Select the desired entry from the list.
6. Select additional categories if desired.
   The tracks found are listed in alphabetical order.
   Not all categories need to be selected. For example, to search for all tracks by a certain artist, call up that artist only. All of the tracks by that artist are then displayed.
7. "Start play"

Restarting the music search

"New search"

Music search by voice*

For instructions on the voice activation system, refer to page 22.

1. Press the button on the steering wheel.
2. ›Music search‹
3. Open the desired category, e.g. ›Select artist‹.
4. Say the desired entry in the list.
5. Select additional categories if desired.

To select a track directly:

›Title ...‹

Say the voice command and the name of the desired track in one sentence.

Current playback

The list of tracks that was generated last by the music search or the album selected last.

1. "Current playback"

2. Select the desired track, if necessary.

Top 50

List of the 50 most frequently played tracks.

1. "CD/Multimedia"
2. "Music collection"
3. "Top 50"
4. Select the desired track, if necessary.

Albums

All stored albums, listed in order of their storage dates. Symbols indicate the format.

Symbol	Format
	Audio CD
	Compressed audio files

1. "CD/Multimedia"
2. "Music collection"
3. Select the desired album.

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 602 735 - © 08/09 BMW AG

Depending on the album, the tracks or the subdirectories of the album are displayed. The first track is played automatically, if possible.

4. To select tracks, change directories if needed. To go up one level in the directory, move the controller to the left.

Random play sequence

All tracks of the selection are played back in random sequence.

1. "CD/Multimedia"
2. "Music collection"
3. Open "Options".
4. "Random"

CarManuals2.com

Managing music

Albums

Renaming an album

The name of the album, if available, is automatically entered when the album is stored. If the name is unknown, it can be changed later if needed.

An album cannot be renamed while a track from that album is being played.

1. "CD/Multimedia"
2. "Music collection"
3. Highlight the album.
4. Open "Options".
5. "Rename album"

6. Select the letters individually.

Deleting an album

An album cannot be deleted while a track from that album is being played.

1. "CD/Multimedia"
2. "Music collection"
3. Highlight the album.
4. Open "Options".
5. "Delete album"

Deleting a directory and track

A track cannot be deleted while it is being played back.

A directory cannot be deleted while a track from that directory is being played back.

1. "CD/Multimedia"
2. "Music collection"
3. Highlight the directory or track.
4. Open "Options".
5. "Delete folder" or "Delete track".

Free memory capacity

Display the free memory capacity in the music collection.

1. "CD/Multimedia"
2. "Music collection"
3. Open "Options".
4. "Free memory"

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 602 735 - © 08/09 BMW AG

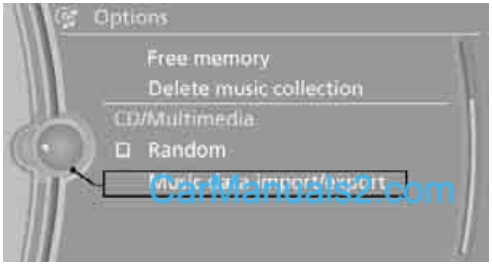
Music collection

Backing up the music collection

The entire music collection can be stored on a USB device. Make sure there is enough free memory capacity on the USB device.

Depending on the number of tracks, backing up the music collection may take several hours. Therefore, it is best to perform the backup during a long trip.

1. Start the engine.
2. Connect the USB device to the USB interface in the glove compartment.
3. "CD/Multimedia"
4. "Music collection"
5. Open "Options".
6. "Music data import/export"



7. "Backup music on USB"

Restoring the music collection in the vehicle

When storing music from the USB device, the existing music collection in the vehicle is replaced.◀

1. "CD/Multimedia"
2. "Music collection"
3. Open "Options".
4. "Music data import/export"
5. "Restore music from USB"

Deleting the music collection

1. "CD/Multimedia"
2. "Music collection"
3. Open "Options".
4. "Delete music collection"

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 602 735 - © 08/09 BMW AG

External devices

AUX-IN port

You can connect an external audio device, e.g. an MP3 player, and play the sound via the vehicle speakers. The sound can be adjusted via iDrive.

Connecting

Lift up the center armrest.

Connection for audio playback:
TRS connector 1/8"/3.5 mm

To play audio tracks over the car's loudspeaker system, connect the headset or line-out port of the external device to the AUX-IN port.

Starting audio playback

Connect the audio device, switch it on and select a track. Operate the system on the audio device.

Via iDrive

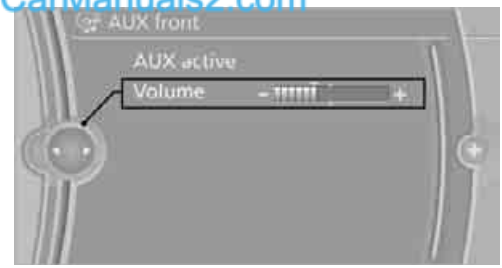
1. "CD/Multimedia"
2. If applicable, "External devices"
3. "AUX front"

Adjust volume

The volume of the sound output depends on the audio device. If this volume differs markedly from the volume of the other audio sources, it is advisable to adjust the volumes.

1. "CD/Multimedia"
2. If applicable, "External devices"
3. "AUX front"
4. "Volume"

CarManuals2.com



5. To adjust: turn the controller.
6. To store: press the controller.

USB audio interface*/ additional connection of music player in mobile phone*

It is possible to connect external audio devices/ mobile phones. They can be operated on the iDrive. The sound is played back on the vehicle loudspeakers.

Connectors for external devices

- ▷ Connection via USB audio interface: Apple iPod/iPhone, USB devices, e.g. MP3 player, USB flash drive, or mobile phones that are supported by the USB audio interface.
- ▷ Connection via snap-in adapter*, refer to page 172; when equipped with an additional connection of the music player in the mobile phone: Apple iPhone/mobile phones. Playback is only possible if an audio device/mobile phone is not connected to the USB audio interface.

Due to the large number of different audio devices/mobile phones available on the market, it cannot be ensured that every audio device/ mobile phone is operable on the vehicle.

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 602 735 - © 08/09 BMW AG

Ask about suitable audio devices/mobile phones at your BMW center.

Audio files

The system can play back common audio files, e.g. MP3, WMA, WAV (PCM) and AAC, as well as playback lists in the M3U format.

CarManuals2.com

Connecting via the USB audio interface

Lift up the center armrest.

Apple iPod/iPhone

To connect the device, use the special cable adapter for the Apple iPod/iPhone, available from your BMW center. The cable adapter is required for a flawless connection.

USB device

To connect the device, use a flexible adapter cable to protect the USB interface and your USB device against physical damage.◀

Connect the USB device to the USB audio interface.

After connecting for the first time, the information of all tracks (e.g. artist, music genre) and the playback lists of the USB device are transferred to the vehicle. This process can take some time. The time required is dependent on the USB device and on the number of tracks.

During transmission, the tracks can be called up via the file directory.

Information from up to four USB devices can be stored in the vehicle, or a total of about 16,000 tracks.

If a fifth USB device is connected or if more than 16,000 tracks are stored, information on existing tracks may be deleted.

Music tracks with integrated Digital Rights Management (DRM) cannot be played.◀

Starting audio playback

If the audio device has a device name, this will be displayed if possible.

1. "CD/Multimedia"
2. "External devices"
3. Select the symbol.
   The name of the audio device may appear.

The playback starts with the first track. When an Apple iPhone is connected via the snap-in adapter and an audio device is connected to the AUX-IN port at the same time, the audio signal of the AUX-IN port is played.

Information about the track

If information about a track has been stored, it is displayed automatically:

- Artist
- Album title
- Number of tracks
- Track file name

Track search

You can call up the tracks via the playback lists and information. With USB devices you can also call up the tracks via the file directory.

Selection is possible via:

- Playback lists

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 602 735 - © 08/09 BMW AG

▷ Information: type of music, artist, album, track

▷ Additionally for USB devices: file directory, composer

Tracks are displayed if they have been saved in the Latin alphabet.

Starting a track search

1. "CD/Multimedia"
2. "External devices"
3. Select the symbol.
   The name of the audio device may appear.
4. Select the desired category, "Genre", "Artist".

All entries are displayed in a list. The "A-Z search" can be used to find specific entries.

CarManuals2.com

   ▷ Open "A-Z search" and enter the desired entry.

   ▷ Select the desired entry from the list.

5. Select additional categories if desired.

   The tracks found are listed. Not all categories need to be selected. For example, to search for all tracks by a certain artist, call up that artist only. All of the tracks by that artist are then displayed.

6. "Start play"

Restarting a track search

"New search"

Playback lists

To open playback lists:

1. "CD/Multimedia"
2. "External devices"
3. Select the symbol.
4. "Playlists"

Current playback

List of tracks currently being played.

1. "CD/Multimedia"
2. "External devices"
3. Select the symbol.
4. "Current playback"

Random play sequence

You can play back the tracks of the selected list in random sequence, e.g. all tracks of an artist.

1. "CD/Multimedia"
2. "External devices"
3. Open "Options".
4. "Random"

Fast forward/reverse

Press and hold the button for the corresponding direction.

Notes

Do not subject the audio device to extreme environmental conditions, e.g. extremely high temperatures, refer to the operating instructions of the audio device. Otherwise, the audio device can be damaged and the resulting distraction can reduce road safety while driving.◀

Depending on the configuration of the audio files, e.g. bit rates greater than 256 Kbit/s, proper playback cannot always be ensured.

Connecting instructions

▷ The connected audio device is supplied with a current of max. 500 mA if this is supported by the device. Therefore, do not connect the device to the power socket in the vehicle.

▷ Do not force the plug into the USB interface.

▷ Do not connect devices such as fans or lamps to the USB audio interface.

▷ Do not connect USB hard discs.

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 602 735 - © 08/09 BMW AG

▷ Do not use the audio interface to recharge external devices.

CarManuals2.com

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 602 735 - © 08/09 BMW AG

CarManuals2.com

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 602 735 - © 08/09 BMW AG

Communications

This chapter summarizes how to operate your mobile phone using iDrive or voice commands and how to use BMW Assist or BMW TeleService.

CarManuals2.com

Telephone*

The concept

Your BMW is equipped with a full preparation package mobile phone. After pairing a suitable mobile phone with the vehicle once, you can operate the mobile phone via the iDrive, the buttons on the steering wheel or using voice commands*.

CarManuals2.com

A mobile phone that has been paired once is automatically detected again with the engine running or the ignition switched on as soon as it is in the vehicle interior. The logon data of up to four mobile phones can be stored simultaneously. If several mobile phones are detected simultaneously, the respective last mobile phone paired can be operated via the vehicle.

Using a phone in your vehicle

Using snap-in adapter*

The so-called snap-in adapter, a mobile phone cradle, enables the battery to be charged and the mobile phone to be connected to the external antenna of your vehicle. This ensures improved network reception and a consistent voice reproduction quality. Ask your BMW center which mobile phones snap-in adapters are offered for.

For your safety

A car phone makes life more convenient in many ways, and can even save lives in an emergency. While you should consult your mobile phone's separate operating instructions for a detailed description of safety precautions and information, we request that you direct your particular attention to the following:

⚠ Only make entries when traffic conditions allow you to do so. Do not hold the mobile phone in your hand while you are driving; use the hands-free system instead. If you do not observe this precaution, your being distracted can endanger vehicle occupants and other road users.◀

Suitable mobile phones

Ask your BMW center which mobile phones with a Bluetooth interface are supported by the mobile phone preparation package or which mobile phones snap-in adapters are available for. These mobile phones support the functions described in this Owner's Manual with a certain software version. Malfunctions can occur with other mobile phones.

Operating options

You can operate the mobile phone using:

- ▷ Buttons on steering wheel, refer to page 11
- ▷ iDrive, refer to page 16
- ▷ Voice commands*, refer to page 169
- ▷ Programmable memory buttons, refer to page 20

Avoid operating a mobile phone recognized by the vehicle via the mobile phone's keypad, otherwise malfunctions may result.

Commissioning

Pairing mobile phone in vehicle

The following prerequisites must be met:

- ▷ Compatible mobile phone: The mobile phone is supported by the full preparation package mobile phone. Information on this subject is also provided on the Internet at: www.bmw.com/bluetooth
- ▷ The mobile phone is ready to operate.
- ▷ Bluetooth is activated in the vehicle, refer to page 164, and on the mobile phone.

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 602 735 - © 08/09 BMW AG

- Depending on the mobile phone, certain settings may be necessary on the mobile phone, e.g. via the following menu items:
  - Bluetooth activated
  - Connection must be allowed without requiring further confirmation
  - Reconnect
- Depending on the mobile phone model, the setting energy saving mode can, for example, result in vehicle failing to detect the paired mobile phone.
- For pairing, define a 4- to 16-digit number of your choice as the Bluetooth Passkey, e.g. 25081107. A long and complex number offers better protection against unauthorized access. This Bluetooth passkey is no longer required following successful pairing.
- The ignition is switched on.

CarManuals2.com

Only pair the mobile phone with the vehicle stopped, otherwise the passengers and other road users can be endangered due to a lack of attentiveness on the part of the driver.◀

Switching on ignition

1. Insert the remote control as far as possible into the ignition lock.
2. Switch on the ignition by pressing the Start/Stop button without depressing the brake or clutch pedal.

Preparation via iDrive

3. "Telephone"
4. "Bluetooth"
5. "Add new phone"

The Bluetooth name of the vehicle is displayed.

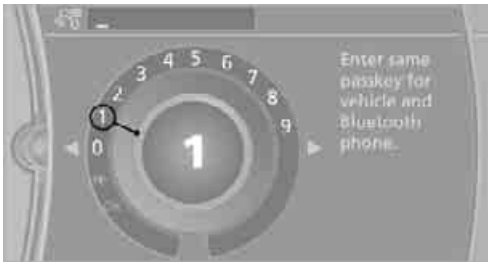
Preparation with mobile phone

6. Additional operations must be carried out on the mobile phone and differ depending on the model, refer to the operating instructions of your mobile phone, e.g. find, connect or pair under Bluetooth device.
   The Bluetooth name of the vehicle appears on the mobile phone display.
7. Select the Bluetooth name of the vehicle on the mobile phone display.

Pairing

Depending on your mobile phone, you will first be requested consecutively via the display of your mobile phone or iDrive to enter the Bluetooth passkey you specified.

8. Enter the Bluetooth passkey.
   Depending on the mobile phone, approx. 30 seconds are available for entering the Bluetooth passkey on the mobile phone and on the Control Display.



If pairing was successful, the mobile phone appears at the top of the list of mobile phones.

Following the initial pairing

- The mobile phone is detected/connected in the vehicle within 2 minutes if the engine is running or the ignition is switched on.
- As soon as a mobile phone is detected by the vehicle, the phone book entries stored on the SIM card or on your mobile phone are transmitted to your vehicle. This transmission is dependent on your mobile phone, refer to the operating instructions of the

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 602 735 - © 08/09 BMW AG

mobile phone if necessary, and can take several minutes.

- ▷ Four mobile phones can be paired.
- ▷ Specific settings may be necessary in some mobile phones, e.g. authorization or a secure connection, refer to the mobile phone operating instructions.

If not all phone book entries are displayed:

- ▷ Transfer all phone book entries from the SIM card to the mobile phone if necessary.
- ▷ It may not be possible to display phone book entries with special characters.

Checking if pairing is unsuccessful

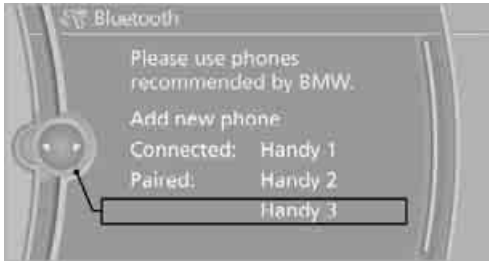
- ▷ Is the mobile phone supported by the mobile phone preparation package? Information on this subject is also provided on the Internet at: www.bmw.com/bluetooth.
- ▷ Do the Bluetooth passkeys on the mobile phone and the vehicle match? The same Bluetooth passkey must be entered both on the mobile phone display and via iDrive.
- ▷ Have you required longer than 30 seconds to enter the Bluetooth passkey? Then repeat the pairing procedure.
- ▷ Are too many Bluetooth devices connected to the mobile phone? If so, delete the connections with other devices on the mobile phone.
- ▷ The mobile phone no longer reacts? Switch the mobile phone off and then on again or disconnect the power supply.
- ▷ Repeat the pairing procedure.
- ▷ If all items on the list have been checked and the mobile phone still cannot be paired, please contact Customer Relations.

Connecting a particular mobile phone

If more than one mobile phone is detected by the vehicle, the mobile phone at the top of the list is connected. A different mobile phone can be connected by selecting it.

CarManuals2.com

1. "Telephone"
2. "Bluetooth"
3. Select the desired mobile phone.



Unpairing the mobile phone from the vehicle

1. "Telephone"
2. "Bluetooth"
3. Highlight the mobile phone that is to be unpaired.
4. Open "Options".
5. "Remove phone from list"

The unpaired mobile phone is deleted from the list.
The phone book entries and the lists of stored phone numbers are also deleted.

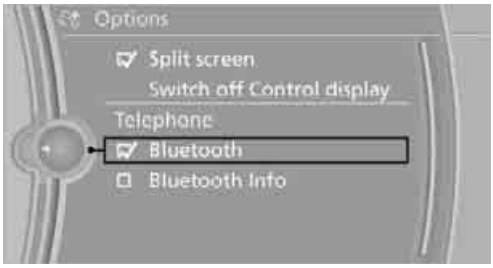
Activating/deactivating Bluetooth link

▷ Bluetooth technology is not approved in all countries. Observe the applicable local regulations. Temporarily deactivate the Bluetooth link between the vehicle and the mobile phone if necessary.
If the Bluetooth link is deactivated, you cannot operate your mobile phone via the vehicle and other devices with a Bluetooth interface can be used via the mobile phone, e.g. a laptop computer.◀

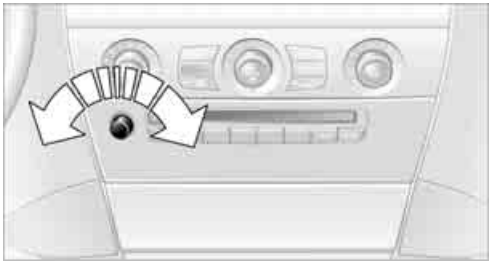
Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 602 735 - © 08/09 BMW AG

To temporarily deactivate the Bluetooth link between the vehicle and your mobile phone:

1. "Telephone"
2. Open "Options".
3. "Bluetooth"



Adjusting volume



Turn the knob during a call to select the desired volume.

This volume for the hands-free system is maintained, even if the other audio sources are set to minimum volume.

The setting is stored for the remote control currently in use.

Operation via iDrive

You can operate the following functions via iDrive:

- ▷ Accepting/refusing a call
- ▷ Dialing phone numbers
- ▷ Dialing phone numbers from the phone book
- ▷ Selecting stored phone numbers, e.g. from the list of received calls
- ▷ Ending a call

When the ignition is switched off or in radio readiness, e.g. after taking the remote control out of the ignition switch, you can continue an ongoing call via the hands-free system for several minutes.

Speech quality

If the person you are talking to cannot understand you well, this may be due to excessively loud background noises. The full preparation package mobile phone can compensate for these noises to a certain extent. To optimize voice quality during a call, we recommend that you:

- ▷ Reduce background noises, e.g. by closing the windows, reducing the air volume of the automatic climate control or pointing the opened front vent outlets downward
- ▷ Reduce the volume of the hands-free system.

Requirements

- ▷ The logon data of the mobile phone are stored in the vehicle and the mobile phone is ready to operate.
- ▷ The engine is running or the ignition is switched on.
- ▷ The mobile phone is detected by the vehicle.

Receiving calls

If you have the phone number of the caller stored in the phone book and the phone number has been transmitted, the name of the entry is displayed.

Accepting a call

Press the button on the steering wheel

CarManuals2.com

or

"Accept"

Rejecting a call

"Reject"

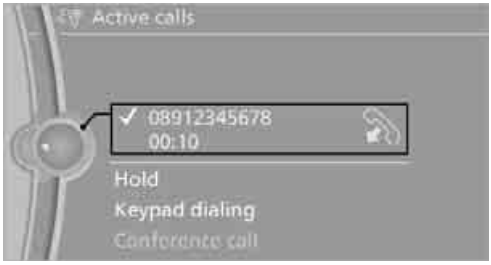
The caller is diverted to your mailbox if it has been activated.

Ending a call

Press the button on the steering wheel

or

1. "Telephone"
2. "Active calls"
3. Select an active call.



Dialing phone numbers

1. "Telephone"
2. "Dial number"
3. Select the digits individually.
4. Select this symbol to establish the connection

or

Press the button on the steering wheel.

The phone number can also be entered using voice commands*, refer to page 169.

For your phone number to be displayed to the person you are talking to, the display of phone numbers must be enabled by your provider.

Calls with multiple parties

You can switch between calls and connect two calls to a single conference call. These functions must be supported by the mobile phone and service provider.

Accepting a call while speaking to another party

This function may need to be enabled by the service provider and the mobile phone may have to be set up accordingly.

If a second call comes in during an active call, you will hear a call waiting signal.

"Accept"

The call is accepted and the existing call is put on hold.

Establishing a second call

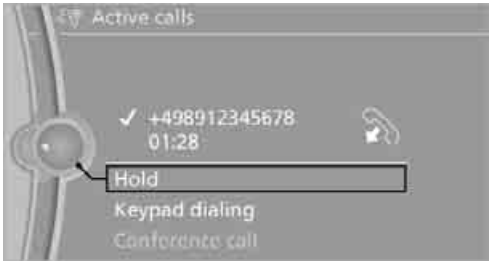
Establish another call during an active call.

1. "Telephone"
2. "Active calls"

CarManuals2.com

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 602 735 - © 08/09 BMW AG

3. "Hold"



The existing call is put on hold.

4. Dial the new phone number or select it from a list.

Switching between two calls, toggling

▷ Active call: indicated by a red handset

▷ Call on hold: indicated by a green handset

To switch to the call on hold, select this handset.

Establishing a conference call

Two calls can be connected to a single telephone conference call.

1. Establish two calls.
2. "Conference call"

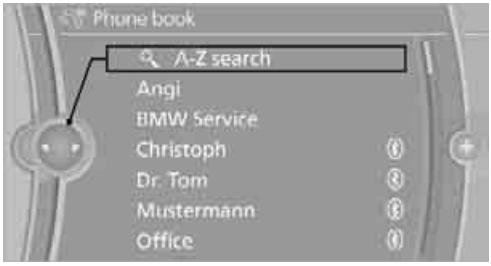
When terminating a conference call, both calls are ended.

Phone book

The phone book accesses the contacts* and shows all contacts for which a phone number has been stored. The entries can be selected to make a call.

1. "Telephone"
2. "Phone book"

All contacts with a phone number are displayed. A symbol indicates the storage location of the contacts.



Symbol	Storage location
No symbol	In the vehicle; the address has not been checked as a destination.
	In the vehicle; the address has been checked as a destination.
	Mobile phone

Calling a contact

1. Select the desired contact.
   A connection is established immediately if calling contacts with one phone number.

   For contacts with several phone numbers:
2. Select the desired phone number.
   The connection is established.

Editing a contact

The entries in the contacts can be changed. When a contact from the mobile phone is changed, the changes are not stored on the mobile phone. A copy of the entry is stored in the vehicle.

1. Highlight the contact.
2. Open "Options".
3. "Edit entry"

The contact can be edited.

CarManuals2.com

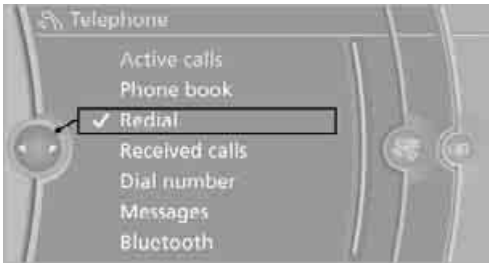
Redialing

The eight phone numbers dialed last are stored.

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 602 735 - © 08/09 BMW AG

Dialing the number via iDrive

1. "Telephone"
2. "Redial"



3. Select the desired entry.
   The connection is established.

Deleting entries

1. Highlight an entry.
2. Open "Options".
3. "Delete entry" or "Delete list".

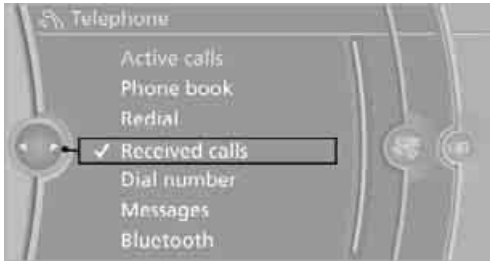
Saving an entry in the contacts

1. Highlight an entry.
2. Open "Options".
3. "Store as new contact" or "Add to existing contact".
4. Select the type of number: "Home", "Business", "Mobile" or "Other".
5. Complete the entries if necessary.
6. "Store in vehicle"

Received calls

The 20 calls that were last received are displayed.

1. "Telephone"
2. "Received calls"



Dialing a number

Select an entry.
The connection is established.

Deleting entries

1. Highlight an entry.
2. Open "Options".
3. "Delete entry" or "Delete list".

Saving an entry in the contacts

1. Highlight an entry.
2. Open "Options".
3. "Store as new contact" or "Add to existing contact".
4. Select the type of number: "Home", "Business", "Mobile" or "Other".
5. Complete the entries if necessary.
6. "Store contact"

Messages

Different types of messages can be displayed:

- ▷ My Info messages from the BMW Assist portal
- ▷ Messages from the BMW Concierge service

Displaying messages

1. "Telephone"
2. "Messages"
3. Select the desired message.

CarManuals2.com

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 602 735 - © 08/09 BMW AG

My Info

To start destination guidance:

1. Select the message that contains the desired destination.
2. "Start guidance" or "Add as another dest.".

Dial the number in the message:

1. Select the message that contains the desired number.
2. "Call"

Messages from the concierge service

To use the address in destination guidance*:

1. Select the message.
2. "Start guidance" or "Add as another dest.".

3. Start destination guidance, if necessary.

To dial a phone number:

1. Select the message.
2. "Call"

To store the address:

1. Select the message.
2. Open "Options".
3. "Store contact in vehicle"

Deleting messages

1. Select the message to be deleted.
2. Open "Options".
3. "Delete message"

Switching between the mobile phone and hands-free system

From mobile phone to hands-free system*

You can continue calls begun outside the Bluetooth range of the vehicle via the hands-free system when the motor is running or the ignition is switched on. Depending on your mobile phone, the system automatically changes over to the hands-free mode.

For mobile phones that do not automatically change over to the hands-free mode:

Depending on the mobile phone model used, the conversation can be continued via the hands-free system if necessary. Follow the instructions displayed on the mobile phone display, refer to the operating instructions of your mobile phone.

From hands-free system to mobile phone

When you telephone via the hands-free system, you can also continue the call via the mobile phone if necessary, depending on the mobile phone model. Act according to what is shown on the mobile phone display, refer to the operating instructions of your mobile phone.

CarManuals2.com

Alternatively, you can deactivate the Bluetooth link, refer to page 164.

Depending on your mobile phone model, poor reception of the wireless communications network can result in the system changing from the hands-free system to the mobile phone.

Operation by voice*

The concept

▷ You can operate your mobile phone without having to remove your hands from the steering wheel.

▷ Most menu items on the Control Display can be voiced as commands. The voice

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 602 735 - © 08/09 BMW AG

activation system supports you by making announcements and asking questions.

▷ ›...‹ Verbal instructions to use with the voice activation system.

Requirements

The same prerequisites as for operation via iDrive apply, refer to page 165.

Voice commands

Activating voice activation system

1. Briefly press the button on the steering wheel.
   An acoustic signal indicates that you can say commands.
2. Say the command.

Ending/canceling operation by voice

Briefly press the button on the steering wheel or

›Cancel‹.

In dialogs where text is spoken, e.g. a name rather than a command, canceling is only possible using the button on the steering wheel.

Having possible commands read aloud

The system understands default commands that must be spoken word for word.
You can have the possible commands for any function read aloud to you:

›Help‹.

The system recognizes digits from zero to nine.

You can say each digit individually or group them into a sequence to accelerate the input.

Using alternative commands

Often there is more than a single command to run a function, e.g.:

›Dial name‹ or ›Name‹.

Example: Dialing phone numbers

To start the dialog:

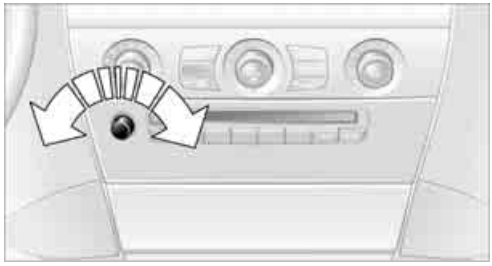
CarManuals2.com

Press the button on the steering wheel.

You say	The voice control answers
›Dial number‹	››Please say the number‹‹
For example ›123 456 7890‹	Depending on equipment: ››123 456 7890. Continue ?‹‹
›Dial‹	››Dialing number‹‹

Setting volume of instructions

You can adjust the volume for the instructions from the system:



Turn the knob during instructions.

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 602 735 - © 08/09 BMW AG

This volume for the instructions is maintained, even if the other audio sources are set to minimum volume.

The setting is stored for the remote control currently in use.

Calling

Dialing phone numbers

1. ›Dial number‹.
2. Say the phone number.
   For telephone calls abroad, say ›Plus‹ and then the country code.
3. ›Dial‹.

The connection to the desired subscriber is established.

Correcting phone number

After the last spoken sequence of digits has been repeated by the system, you can delete this sequence of digits.

›Correct number‹.
The digits are deleted.

The command ›Correct number‹ can be repeated as often as you like.

Deleting phone numbers

›Delete‹.

All digits entered up to this point are deleted.

Redialing

To redial the phone number dialed last:

›Redial‹.

Voice phone book

Operating by voice command requires a personal voice phone book.

The entries must be entered using voice commands and are separate from the memory in the mobile phone. In this case, it is not possible to use voice command either to call phone numbers stored in the mobile phone or to store new numbers. Up to 50 entries can be set up. An entry always consists of a name and phone number.

Creating and editing a voice phone book

Store entry:

An entry always consists of a name and a phone number.

1. ›Save name‹.
2. Say the name.
   The spoken length of the names in the phone book must not exceed approx. 2 seconds.
3. Say the phone number after being requested to do so by the system.
4. To store the phone number:
   ›Save‹.

Delete entry:

You can delete any entry from the voice phone book.

1. ›Delete name‹.
   The dialog for deleting an entry is opened.
2. Say the name when prompted.
3. Confirm the query with ›Yes‹.

Delete all entries:

›Delete phonebook‹ deletes all entries in the phone book.

1. ›Delete phonebook‹.
   The dialog for deleting phone book is opened.
2. Confirm the query with ›Yes‹.
3. Confirm the query again with ›Yes‹.

Listen to the entries and select:

You can have all entries in your voice phone book read aloud in the order in which they were entered and select a specific entry to establish a connection:

1. ›Read phonebook‹.
   The dialog for reading phone book is opened.
2. ›Dial number‹, when the desired entry is read aloud.

CarManuals2.com

Selecting an entry

The connection to the phone number of the selected entry is established.

1. ›Dial name‹.
   The dialog for selecting an entry is opened.
2. Say the name when prompted.
3. Confirm the query with ›Yes‹.

Notes

Notes on Emergency Requests

Do not use the voice activation system to initiate an Emergency Request. In stressful situations, the voice and vocal pitch can change. This can unnecessarily delay the establishment of a telephone connection. Use the SOS button* instead, refer to page 212.

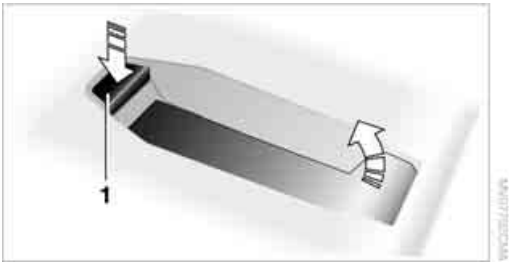
Important for voice commands

For voice commands, keep the following in mind:

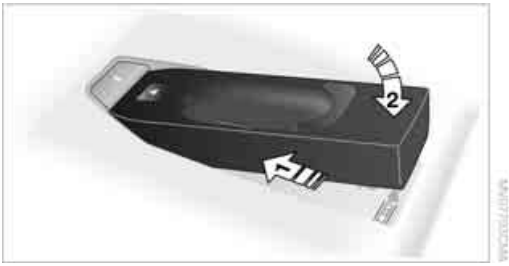
- Say the commands, numbers and letters smoothly and with normal volume, emphasis and speed.
- Always say commands in the language of the voice activation system.
- Keep the doors, windows, glass sunroof* or convertible top* closed to prevent interference from ambient noise.
- Avoid making other noise in the vehicle while speaking.

Inserting/removing the snap-in adapter*

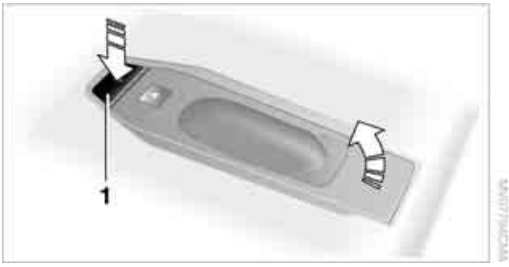
1. Press button **1** and remove the cover.



2. Insert the snap-in adapter in the front and press it downward until it engages.



To remove the snap-in adapter:
Press button **1**.



Inserting mobile phone

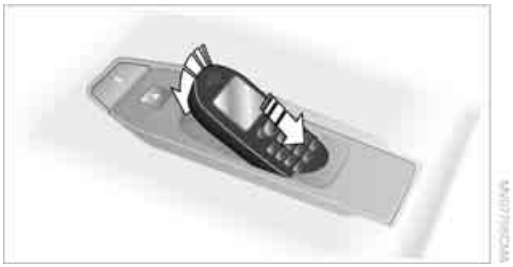
1. Remove the protective cap from the mobile phone's antenna connector if necessary, so

CarManuals2.com

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 602 735 - © 08/09 BMW AG

that the mobile phone can engage in the snap-in adapter.

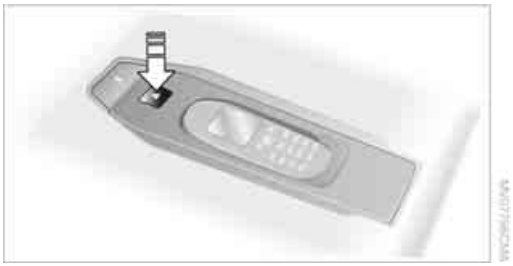
2. Push the mobile phone with the buttons facing upward toward the electrical connections and press down until it engages.



The mobile phone's battery is charged from radio readiness or with the steering unlocked.

▷ To conserve vehicle battery power, avoid using the mobile phone when the ignition is switched off.◀

Removing mobile phone



Press button.

CarManuals2.com

Contacts*

You can create and edit contacts. The contacts from the mobile phone* are displayed as well if this function is supported by the mobile phone. The addresses can be used as destinations for navigation and the phone numbers can be dialed.

New contact

1. "Contacts"
2. "New contact"

3. If the entry fields are still filled with previous entries, select "Delete input fields".
4. To fill in the entry fields:
   Select the symbol next to the entry field.

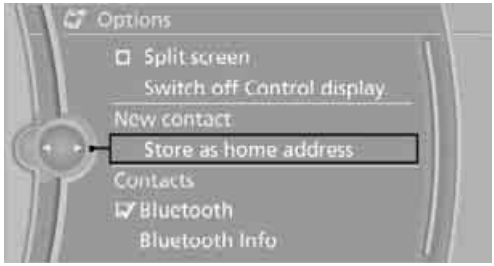
5. Enter the text.

   ▷ If the vehicle is equipped with a navigation system, it is only possible to enter addresses that are contained in the navigation data in the vehicle. This ensures that destination guidance is possible for all addresses.◀
6. If applicable, "Store"
7. "Store contact in vehicle"

Specifying a contact as the home address

A contact can be stored as the home address. It is placed at the top of "My contacts".

1. Create a new contact.
2. Open "Options".
3. "Store as home address"



If the home address is deleted, only the content of the home address entry is deleted and not the entry itself.

CarManuals2.com

My contacts

A list of all contacts in the vehicle and on the mobile phone*.

Displaying contacts

"My contacts"

All contacts are listed in alphabetical order. Depending on the number of contacts, an A-Z

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 602 735 - © 08/09 BMW AG

search is offered. A symbol indicates the storage location of the contacts:

Symbol	Storage location
No symbol	In the vehicle; the address has not been checked as a destination.
	In the vehicle; the address has been checked as a destination.
	Mobile phone*

Displaying the detailed view*

Select the desired contact.
All fields that have been filled in for that contact are displayed.

Selecting a contact as the navigation destination

1. "My contacts"
2. Select the desired contact.
3. Select the desired address.

Contacts from the mobile phone* may contain addresses that do not match the navigation data contained in the vehicle and thus cannot be used for destination guidance. In this case: Manually correct the address.

Checking the address as a destination*

An address that is to be used for destination guidance must match the navigation data contained in the vehicle. An address that is stored on the mobile phone can be corrected to match to the navigation data.

1. Select the desired contact and highlight the address.
2. Open "Options".
3. "Check as destination"
4. Correct and store the address, if necessary.

After an address has been corrected, the contact can be stored in the vehicle. The address is not changed on the mobile phone.

Dialing a phone number*

1. "My contacts"
2. Select the desired contact.
3. Select the desired phone number.

The connection is established.

Editing a contact

1. "My contacts"
2. Select the desired contact.
3. "Edit contact"

4. Change the entries.
5. Move the controller to the left.
6. "Yes"

If a contact from the mobile phone* is edited, the changes are not stored on the mobile phone. A copy of the entry is stored in the vehicle, and only this copy is displayed.

Deleting contacts

Only contacts that are stored in the vehicle are deleted. The contacts on the mobile phone* cannot be deleted.

1. "My contacts"
2. Highlight the contact.
3. Open "Options".
4. "Delete contact" or "Delete all contacts".

CarManuals2.com

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 602 735 - © 08/09 BMW AG

BMW Assist*

BMW Assist*

BMW Assist provides a number of different services. For example, the position data of the vehicle can be transmitted to the BMW Assist Response Center when an Emergency Request* is sent.

Many BMW Assist services depend on the individually agreed contract.

After your contract has expired, the BMW Assist system will be deactivated by the BMW Assist Response Center without you having to visit a BMW center. After the BMW Assist system has been deactivated, no BMW Assist service will be available. The BMW Assist system can be reactivated by a BMW center after signing a new contract.

Requirements

- ▷ The installed BMW Assist system is logged on to a mobile phone network. This network must be capable of transmitting the services.
- ▷ To transmit position data, the vehicle must be able to determine the current position.
- ▷ To activate and update BMW Assist, a GPS signal must be available.
- ▷ The BMW Assist service contract was signed with your BMW center or with the BMW Assist Response Center. Activation must be completed.
- ▷ BMW Assist is activated.

Offered services

- ▷ Emergency Request: when you press the SOS button, a connection is established to the BMW Assist Response Center. The BMW Assist Response Center then speaks with you and takes further steps to help you.
- ▷ Automatic collision notification: under certain conditions, a connection is established to the BMW Assist Response Center after a serious accident. If possible, the BMW Assist Response Center then speaks with you and takes further steps to help you.
- ▷ Enhanced roadside assistance: BMW Roadside Assistance* can be contacted if assistance is needed in the event of a breakdown. If possible, the vehicle data and position data are transmitted during this time.
- ▷ BMW Customer Relations: connection with Customer Relations for information on all aspects of your vehicle.
- ▷ TeleService: data on your vehicle's service status or required inspections are transmitted to your BMW center, either automatically before a service due date or when you request a BMW service appointment.
- ▷ Remote door unlock: the BMW Assist Response Center provides assistance if, for example, the remote control is not available and the vehicle needs to be opened.
- ▷ Stolen vehicle recovery: after you report to the police that your vehicle was stolen, the BMW Assist Response Center can determine its position.
- ▷ In addition to these services, the optional Convenience Plan offers a concierge service and information for route planning, traffic and weather. A limited number of calls can be made via the BMW Assist Response Center with Critical Calling, such as when the mobile phone is not available or discharged.
  Press the SOS button to contact the BMW Assist Response Center.

TeleService*

TeleService supports communication with your BMW center.

- ▷ Data on the vehicle's service requirements can be sent directly to the BMW center. In this way, the BMW center can plan its work

CarManuals2.com

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 602 735 - © 08/09 BMW AG

in advance. This shortens the duration of the service appointment.

- In the event of a breakdown, data on the vehicle's condition can be sent directly to Roadside Assistance*.
- The service varies by country.
- Connection costs may ensue.
- Services may be restricted abroad.

Requirements

- BMW Assist is activated.
- Wireless reception is available.
- The engine is running.

Concierge service*

When you call the BMW Assist Concierge, you can obtain information about, for example, restaurants, emergency pharmacy services, gas stations or hotels, as well as receive the corresponding telephone numbers and addresses.

You can then dial a phone number directly or use an address for destination guidance*.

CarManuals2.com

Starting the concierge service

1. "BMW Assist"
2. "Concierge"

3. "Start service"

A voice connection is established to the BMW Concierge service.

You are connected to the BMW Concierge service to obtain the required information. You can then have the phone number and address sent to you and, for example, use it for destination guidance in the navigation system. Many hotels can be booked directly through the BMW Assist concierge service. When an information message is received, a list of the received messages is displayed automatically. Open the message via the message list, refer to page 168.

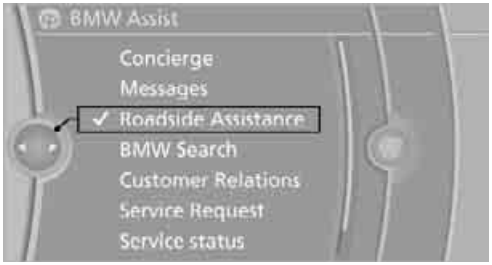
Roadside Assistance

You can call Roadside Assistance* of the BMW Group should you require help in the event of a breakdown.

Starting Roadside Assistance

Vehicle not equipped with BMW Assist or TeleService

1. "BMW Assist"
2. "Roadside Assistance"



Roadside Assistance number is displayed.

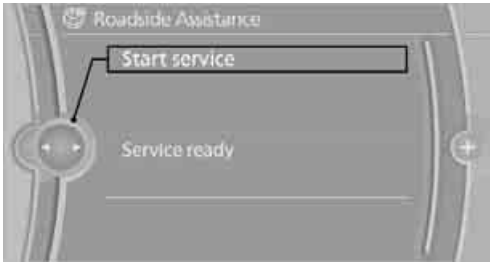
3. Select the number. If a mobile phone* is paired, a connection is established to BMW Roadside Assistance.

Vehicle equipped with BMW Assist or TeleService

1. "BMW Assist"
2. "Roadside Assistance"

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 602 735 - © 08/09 BMW AG

3. "Start service"



TeleService Diagnosis*

TeleService Diagnosis enables the wireless transmission of detailed vehicle data that are important for vehicle diagnosis. TeleService Diagnosis can be started after a prompt by Roadside Assistance and termination of the voice connection.

TeleService Help*

BMW TeleService Help enables an in-depth diagnosis of the vehicle by Roadside Assistance via wireless transmission. TeleService Help can be started after a prompt by Roadside Assistance and termination of the voice connection.

CarManuals2.com

Starting TeleService Help

1. Park the vehicle in a safe place.
2. Set the parking brake.
3. The engine is running.
4. "TeleService Help"

After completion of TeleService Help, a voice connection is established to Roadside Assistance.

Activating BMW Assist*

If the services included in a valid BMW Assist subscription are not displayed, they may need to be activated.

1. Make sure that the vehicle can determine its current position. Reception is usually best when you have an unobstructed view to the sky.
2. Switch on the ignition.
3. "Activate BMW Assist"

Activation may take several minutes. If another menu is opened, activation continues running in the background.

BMW Search*

BMW Search is an online portal that makes certain services available for use in your vehicle, e.g. information on restaurants along your route.

License conditions:

This product contains NetFront Browser software of ACCESS Co., Ltd. Copyright © 2007 ACCESS Co., Ltd. All rights reserved. NetFront is a trademark or registered trademark of ACCESS CO., LTD., in Japan and other countries.

This software is based in part on the work of the Independent JPEG Group.

Requirements

- ▷ Subscription to the optional Convenience Plan.
- ▷ The vehicle is located within wireless network coverage.
- ▷ The date setting on the Control Display is current.

Starting BMW Search

1. "BMW Assist"
2. "BMW Search"

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 602 735 - © 08/09 BMW AG

3. Select "OK", if necessary.

The BMW Search start page is displayed.

Using BMW Search

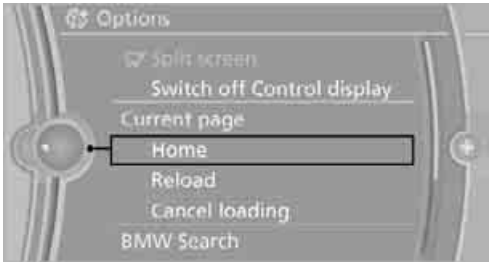
To select and display content:

▷ Turn the controller to highlight an element.

▷ Press the controller to display an element.

Opening the start page

1. Open "Options".
2. "Home"



Loading a new page

1. Open "Options".
2. "Reload"

CarManuals2.com

Cancel

1. Open "Options".
2. "Cancel loading"

Customer Relations

At a glance

Contact BMW Customer Relations for information on all aspects of your vehicle.

Calling Customer Relations

Vehicle equipped with BMW Assist or TeleService

1. "BMW Assist"
2. "Customer Relations"
3. "Start service"

A voice connection is established to BMW Customer Relations.

Vehicle not equipped with BMW Assist or TeleService

1. "BMW Assist"
2. "Customer Relations"

The Customer Relations phone number is displayed. If the vehicle is equipped with the mobile phone preparation package, a voice connection is established.

Service Request*

At a glance

You can send a request to your BMW center to arrange a service appointment. The TeleService data are transmitted during the Service Request. If possible, your BMW center will establish contact with you.

Starting a Service Request

1. "BMW Assist"
2. "Service Request"
3. "Start service"

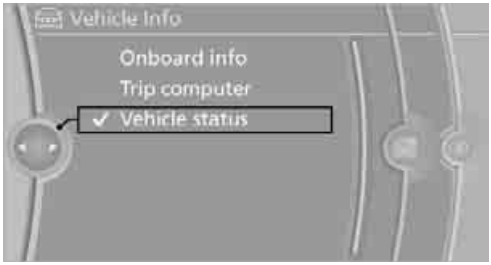
Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 602 735 - © 08/09 BMW AG

Automatic Service Request*

The TeleService data necessary for servicing the vehicle are automatically sent to your BMW center prior to the service deadline. If possible, the center will contact you and a service appointment can be arranged.

You can check when the BMW center was notified.

1. "Vehicle Info"
2. "Vehicle status"



3. Open "Options".
4. "Last Service Request"

Data transfer*

CarManuals2.com

The status of the data transfer is displayed.

1. "BMW Assist"
2. Open "Options".
3. "Data transfer"

Service status*

Displaying available services

Display of all services available in the vehicle. This function can be called up via "Options".

1. "BMW Assist"
2. Open any menu.
3. Open "Options".
4. "Service status"
5. "Available services"

Activating BMW Assist

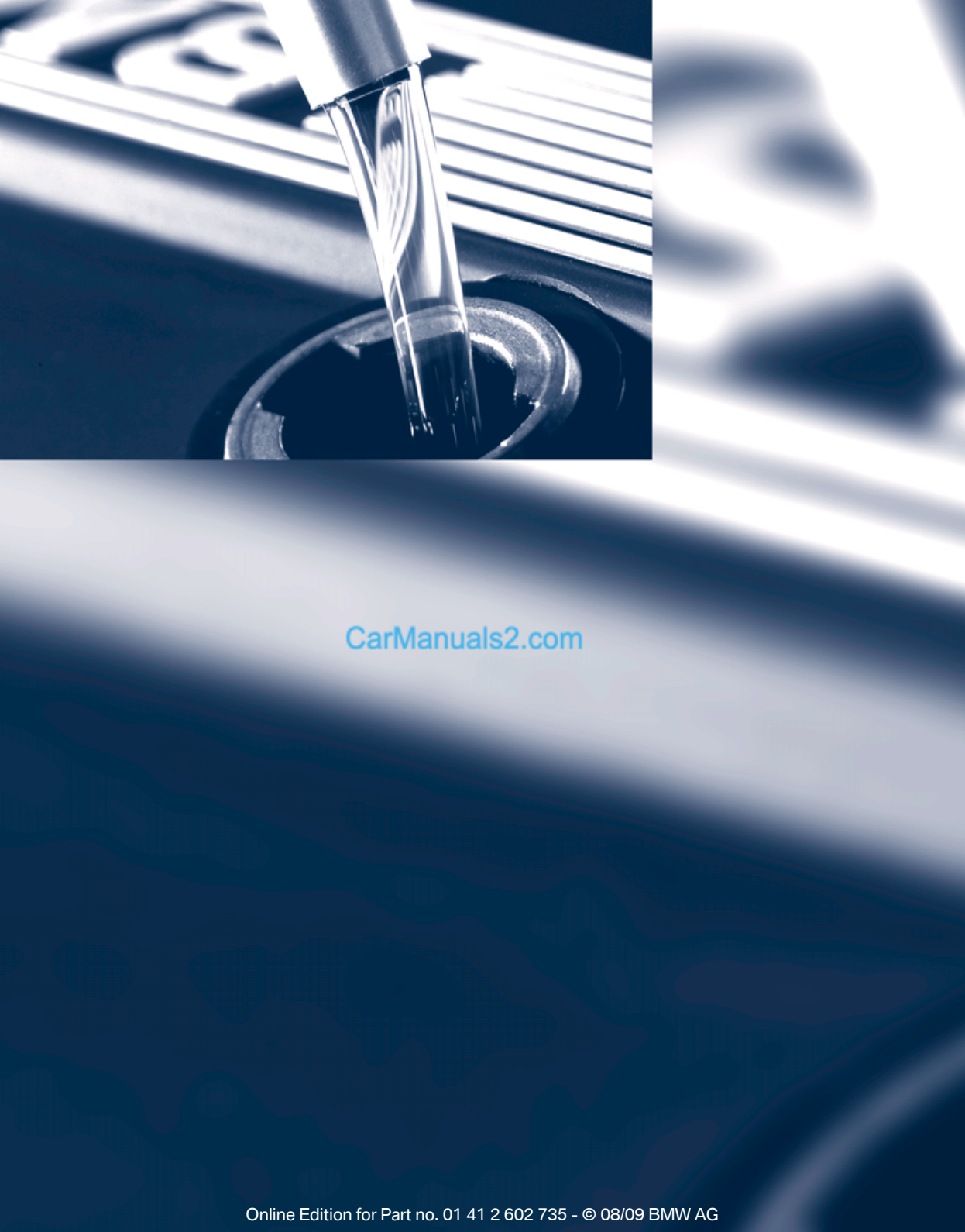
If the services included in a BMW Assist subscription are not displayed, they may need to be activated.

"Activate BMW Assist"

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 602 735 - © 08/09 BMW AG

CarManuals2.com

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 602 735 - © 08/09 BMW AG



CarManuals2.com

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 602 735 - © 08/09 BMW AG

CarManuals2.com

Mobility

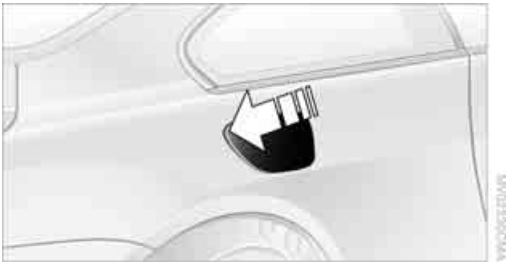
This section helps you maintain your car's mobility by supplying important information on vital topics, including fuels and lubricants, wheels and tires, service, maintenance and breakdown assistance.

Refueling

Switch off the engine before refueling; otherwise no fuel can be filled into the tank and a message is displayed.◀

When handling fuel, always observe all applicable precautionary measures and regulations. Never transport reserve fuel containers in the vehicle. They can leak and cause an explosion or a fire in an accident.◀

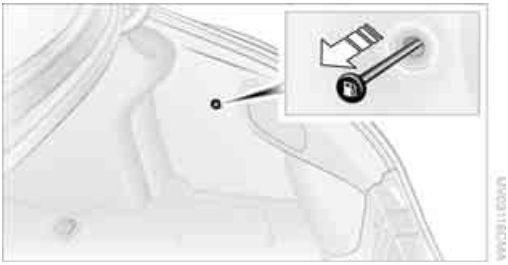
Fuel filler flap



To open and close: briefly press the rear edge of the fuel filler flap.

CarManuals2.com

Unlocking manually

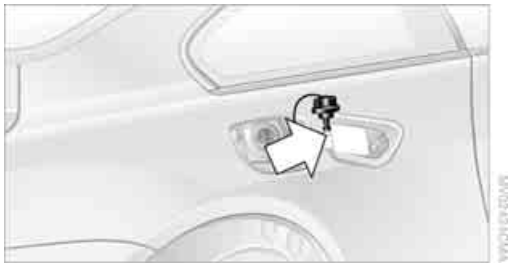


In the event of an electrical malfunction, you can release the fuel filler flap manually:

In the luggage compartment, pull the knob with the gas pump symbol on the right side panel.

Observe the following when refueling

When handling fuels, follow the safety precautions posted at the filling station. Otherwise, there is a danger of personal injury and property damage.◀



Place the fuel filler cap in the bracket attached to the fuel filler flap.

When refueling, insert the filler nozzle completely into the filler pipe. Avoid raising the filler nozzle during refueling; otherwise this

- ▷ results in premature pump shutoff
- ▷ can lead to reduced efficiency in the fuel-vapor recovery system

The fuel tank is full when the filler nozzle clicks off the first time.

Fuel tank capacity

Approx. 18.5 US gal/70 liters, including approx. 4 US gal/15 liters reserve capacity.

Refuel as soon as possible once your cruising range falls below 30 miles/ 50 km, otherwise engine functions are not ensured and damage can occur.◀

Fuel filler cap

Closing

Insert the cap and turn it clockwise until there is a clearly audible click.

Do not crush the band attached to the cap; otherwise, the cap may not properly seal and fuel vapors can escape.◀

A message* is displayed if the cap is loose or missing.

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 602 735 - © 08/09 BMW AG

Fuel specifications

Never used leaded gasoline; it will permanently damage the catalytic converter. Do not use E85, i.e. fuel that consists of 85% ethanol, or Flex Fuel. Otherwise permanent damage to the engine and the fuel supply system will result.◀

CarManuals2.com

Required fuel

Super Premium Gasoline/AKI 93

Always use this premium grade fuel to obtain maximum fuel economy and performance.

The minimum approved fuel grade is AKI 91.

Do not use gasoline below the specified minimum quality, otherwise engine damage can result.◀

Use high-quality brands

Field experience has demonstrated significant differences in fuel quality: volatility, composition, additives, etc., among gasolines offered for sale in the United States and Canada. Fuels containing up to and including 10% ethanol or other oxygenates with up to 2.8% oxygen by weight, that is, 15% MTBE or 3% methanol plus an equivalent amount of cosolvent, will not void the applicable warranties with respect to defects in materials or workmanship.

The use of poor-quality fuels may result in problems relating to drivability and starting, and to a tendency to stall, especially under certain environmental conditions such as high ambient temperature and high altitude.
Should you encounter drivability problems which you suspect could be related to the fuel you are using, we recommend that you respond by switching to a recognized high-quality brand such as gasoline that is advertised as Top Tier Detergent Gasoline.
Failure to comply with these recommendations may also result in unscheduled maintenance.◀

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 602 735 - © 08/09 BMW AG

Wheels and tires

Tire inflation pressure

Information for your safety

The condition of the tires and the maintenance of the specified tire pressure are crucial not only to the tire's service life, but also to driving comfort and most importantly, driving safety.

Checking pressure

Only check tire inflation pressure when the tires are cold. This means after a maximum of 1.25 miles/2 km driving or when the vehicle has been parked for at least 2 hours. When tires are warm, the tire inflation pressure increases.

Check the tire inflation pressure regularly and correct if necessary, including on the spare wheel*: at least twice a month and before starting long trips. Otherwise, driving instability or tire damage, and therefore accidents, can result from incorrect tire inflation pressures.◀

After correcting the tire inflation pressure, reinitialize the Flat Tire Monitor, refer to page 80, or reset the Tire Pressure Monitor, refer to page 81.◀

CarManuals2.com

Pressure specifications

The tables below provide all the correct inflation pressures for the specified tire sizes at ambient temperature.

The inflation pressures apply to the tire sizes and tire brands respectively approved and recommended by BMW; a list of these is available from your BMW center.◀

For correct identification of the right tire inflation pressure for your tires, observe the following:

- Tire sizes for your vehicle
- Load conditions
- Maximum allowable driving speed

Tire inflation pressures for driving up to 100 mph/160 km/h

For normal driving up to 100 mph/160 km/h, adjust pressures to the respective tire inflation pressures listed on the following pages in the column for traveling speeds up to a max. of 100 mph/160 km/h to achieve optimum driving comfort.

These pressure specifications can be found on the door post when you open the driver's door.

The maximum permissible speed for these tire pressures is 100 mph/160 km/h. Do not exceed this speed, otherwise tire damage and accidents could occur.◀

Tire inflation pressures for driving above 100 mph/160 km/h

In order to drive at maximum speeds in excess of 100 mph/160 km/h, please note the tire pressures for speeds exceeding 100 mph/160 km/h listed in the relevant column of the table on the following pages and adjust your tire inflation pressures as needed. Otherwise, tire damage and accidents could occur.◀

Observe all national and local maximum speed limits, otherwise violations of the law could occur.

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 602 735 - © 08/09 BMW AG

Tire inflation pressures for M6 Coupe

Tire size	Pressure specifications in psi/kPa					
	Traveling speeds up to max. of 100 mph/160 km/h		Traveling speeds including those exceeding 100 mph/160 km/h			
All pressure specifications in the table are indicated in psi/kilopascal with cold tires. Cold = ambient temperature						
245/45 R 18 100 V XL M+S	35/240	38/260	35/240	38/260	41/280	46/320
255/40 ZR 19	33/230	-	33/230	-	41/280	-
285/35 ZR 19	-	36/250	-	36/250	-	46/320

More details on the permissible load and weights can be found on page 223.

Tire inflation pressures for M6 Convertible

Tire size	Pressure specifications in psi/kPa					
	Traveling speeds up to max. of 100 mph/160 km/h		Traveling speeds including those exceeding 100 mph/160 km/h			
All pressure specifications in the table are indicated in psi/kilopascal with cold tires. Cold = ambient temperature						
245/45 R 18 100 V XL M+S	35/240	38/260	35/240	38/260	41/280	46/320
255/40 ZR 19	32/220	-	32/220	-	41/280	-
285/35 ZR 19	-	35/240	-	35/240	-	46/320

More details on the permissible load and weights can be found on page 223.

CarManuals2.com

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 602 735 - © 08/09 BMW AG

Tire identification marks

Knowledge of the labeling on the side of the tire makes it easier to identify and choose the right tires.

Tire size

For instance

285/35 ZR 19
245/45 R 18 100 V

Nominal width in mm
Aspect ratio in %
Radial belt construction
Rim diameter in inches
Load rating
(not on ZR tires)
Speed code letter
(in front of the R on ZR tires)

Speed letter

T = up to 118 mph/190 km/h

H = up to 131 mph/210 km/h

V = up to 150 mph/240 km/h

W = up to 167 mph/270 km/h

Y = up to 186 mph/300 km/h

Z = over 150 mph/240 km/h

Tire Identification Number

Tires with DOT codes meet the guidelines of the US Department of Transportation.

DOT code:

For instance

DOT xxxx xxx 1009

Manufacturer code
for tire make
Tire size and tire design
Tire age

Tire age

The tire's date of manufacture is indicated on the sidewall:
DOT ... 1009 means that the tire was manufactured in week 10 of 2009.

BMW recommends replacing all tires at least every 6 years, even if some tires may last for 10 years. This also concerns the tire of the spare wheel*.

Uniform Tire Quality Grading

Quality grades can be found where applicable on the tire sidewall between tread shoulder and maximum section width. For example:

Tread wear 200 Traction AA
Temperature A

DOT Quality Grades

Tread wear
Traction AA A B C
Temperature A B C

All passenger car tires must conform to Federal Safety Requirements in addition to these grades.◀

Tread wear

The tread wear grade is a comparative rating based on the wear rate of the tire when tested under controlled conditions on a specified government test course.
For example, a tire graded 150 would wear one and one-half, 1½, times as well on the government course as a tire graded 100. The relative performance of tires depends upon the actual conditions of their use, however, and may depart significantly from the norm due to variations in driving habits, service practices and differences in road characteristics and climate.

Traction

The traction grades, from highest to lowest, are AA, A, B, and C.
These grades represent the tire's ability to stop on wet pavement as measured under controlled conditions on specified government test surfaces of asphalt and concrete. A tire marked C may have poor traction performance.

The traction grade assigned to this tire is based on straight-ahead braking traction tests, and does not include acceleration, cornering, hydroplaning, or peak traction characteristics.◀

CarManuals2.com

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 602 735 - © 08/09 BMW AG

Temperature

The temperature grades are A, the highest, B, and C, representing the tire's resistance to the generation of heat and its ability to dissipate heat when tested under controlled conditions on a specified indoor laboratory test wheel. Sustained high temperature can cause the material of the tire to degenerate and reduce tire life, and excessive temperature can lead to sudden tire failure. The grade C corresponds to a level of performance which all passenger car tires must meet under the Federal Motor Vehicle Safety Standard No. 109. Grades B and A represent higher levels of performance on the laboratory test wheel than the minimum required by law.

The temperature grade for this tire is established for a tire that is properly inflated and not overloaded. Excessive speed, underinflation, or excessive loading, either separately or in combination, can cause heat buildup and possible tire failure.◀

M+S

Winter and all-season tires.
These have better winter properties than summer tires.

XL

Indicates specially reinforced tires.

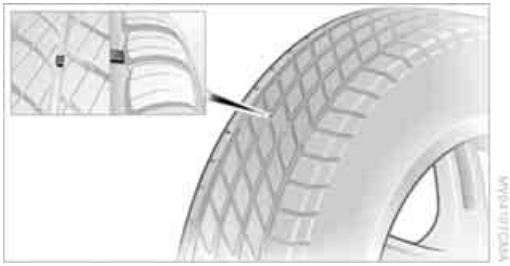
Tire condition

Inspect your tires frequently for tread wear, signs of damage and for foreign objects lodged in the tread. Check the tread depth.

Minimum tread depth

The tread depth should not drop below 0.12 in/3 mm, although, for example, European legislation only specifies a minimum tread depth of 0.063 in/1.6 mm. At tread depths below 0.12 in/3 mm, there is an increased risk of high-speed hydroplaning, even when only small amounts of water are present on the road surface.
Winter tires noticeably loose their suitability for winter use below a tread depth of 0.16 in/4 mm.

For the sake of safety, new tires should be installed.



Wear indicators at the tread-groove base, refer to arrow, are distributed over the tire's circumference and are marked on the side of the tire with TWI – Tread Wear Indicator. If the tire tread has been driven down to the wear indicators, a tread depth of 0.063 in/1.6 mm has been reached.

Wheel/tire damage

Please note that low-profile tires cause wheels, tires and suspension parts to be more susceptible to road hazards and consequential damages.
Unusual vibrations encountered during normal vehicle operation can indicate tire failure or some other vehicle defect. This can, for example, be caused by driving over curbs. These kinds of problems may also be signaled by other changes in vehicle response, such as a strong tendency to pull to the left or right.

In these cases, reduce speed immediately and have wheels and tires thoroughly checked. To do so, drive carefully to the nearest BMW center or tire shop that works according to BMW repair procedures with correspondingly trained personnel. If necessary, have the vehicle towed there. Otherwise, tire damage can be extremely dangerous to vehicle occupants and other road users.◀

New wheels and tires

CarManuals2.com

Have new wheels and tires installed only by your BMW center or tire shop that works according to BMW repair procedures

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 602 735 - © 08/09 BMW AG

with correspondingly trained personnel. If this work is not carried out properly, there is a danger of subsequent damage and related safety hazards. Make sure that the new wheels are balanced.◀

Retreaded tires

CarManuals2.com

BMW does not recommend that you use retreaded tires, as driving safety may be impaired. The causes for this include the possibly different tire casing structures and the often wide variations in their age, which can result in a limited service life.◀

The right wheels and tires

BMW recommends that you use only wheel and tire combinations that BMW has tested and approved for your particular vehicle. Variations in factors such as manufacturing tolerances mean that even wheels and tires with identical official size ratings could actually have different dimensions than the approved units – these differences could lead to body contact, and with it the risk of severe accidents. When selecting the tires, also ensure that they have a sufficient load-carrying capacity. If non-approved wheels and tires are used, BMW cannot evaluate their suitability, and therefore cannot be held liable for driving safety.◀

You can inquire about the right wheel/tire combination at your BMW center.

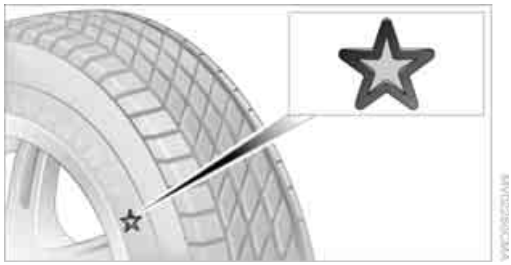
The right wheel-and-tire combination is another vital factor in ensuring reliable operation of various vehicle systems such as ABS and DSC.

To maintain good handling and vehicle response, use only tires of a single tread configuration from a single manufacturer. Following tire damage, have the original wheel and tire combination remounted on the vehicle as soon as possible.

Wheels with electronics for TPM Tire Pressure Monitor

When mounting new tires or converting from summer to winter tires or vice versa, only use wheels with TPM electronics, otherwise the Tire Pressure Monitor cannot detect a flat tire, refer to page 81. Your BMW center will be happy to advise you on this subject.

Recommended tire brands



Certain tire makes are recommended by BMW depending on the tire size. You can recognize these from the clearly visible BMW marking on the tire sidewall.

When used properly, these tires comply with the most demanding standards for safety and vehicle response.

Special characteristics of winter tires

BMW recommends winter tires for use in cold winter driving conditions. Although all-season M+S tires provide better winter traction than summer tires, they generally fail to provide the same levels of cold-weather performance as winter tires.

Watch speed

Always observe the maximum permissible speed for the winter tires, otherwise tire damage may occur, which can result in accidents.◀

After changing wheels/tires

After changing tires or wheels, the slip detection of the Sequential Manual Transmission must become familiar with the changed state.

Reinitialize the system for this purpose:

1. Move the selector lever into the idling position N on a straight stretch of road at a

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 602 735 - © 08/09 BMW AG

speed between 20 mph/30 km/h and 90 mph/150 km/h.

2. Pull both shift paddles for approx. 2 seconds.

If you do not carry out initialization, the system will automatically learn the changed state gradually during driving. This may be noticeable from the clutch opening and closing briefly.

Storage

Store wheels and tires in a cool, dry place with as little exposure to light as possible. Always protect tires against all contact with oil, grease and fuels. Do not exceed the maximum tire inflation pressure indicated on the side wall of the tire.

Rotating wheels between axles

BMW does not recommend moving the front wheels to the rear or vice versa, as otherwise the handling characteristics may be impaired. With tires of different makes and types* such a change is not permissible.

Snow chains*

CarManuals2.com

BMW only tests certain fine-link snow chains, classifies them as road-safe and recommends them. Consult your BMW center for more information.

Use is only permitted in pairs, with winter tires of the size 245/45 R 18 on the rear wheels.

Observe the manufacturer's instructions when mounting snow chains. Do not exceed a speed of 30 mph/50 km/h with the chains mounted.

Make sure that the snow chains are always sufficiently tensioned. Retighten as needed in accordance with the chain manufacturer's specifications.

▷ Do not initialize the Flat Tire Monitor after installing snow chains as this could cause the Flat Tire Monitor to malfunction.
After mounting or removing snow chains, the slip detection of the Sequential Manual Transmission must become familiar with the altered state. To do this, reinitialize the system, refer to After changing wheels/tires, page 190.◀

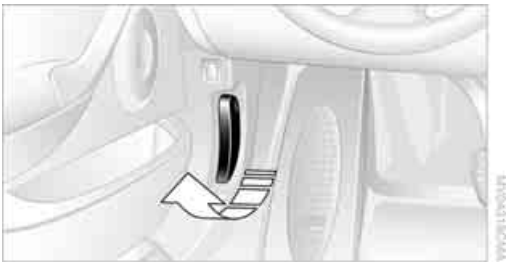
Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 602 735 - © 08/09 BMW AG

Under the hood

Never attempt to perform any service or repair operations on your vehicle without the required professional technical training.
If you do not know what repair procedures to follow, have work on your vehicle done only by your BMW center or a workshop that works according to BMW repair procedures with correspondingly trained personnel. If this work is not carried out properly, there is a danger of subsequent damage and related safety hazards.◀

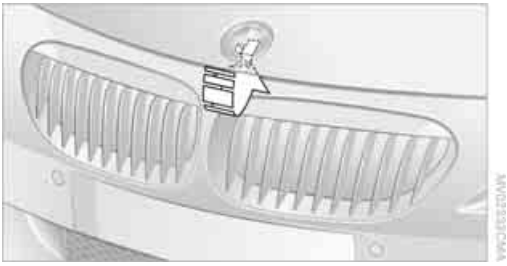
Hood

Releasing



Pull lever.

Opening



Press the release handle and open the hood. Do not open the hood until the engine has cooled down.

You cannot start off with the hood open.◀

Closing

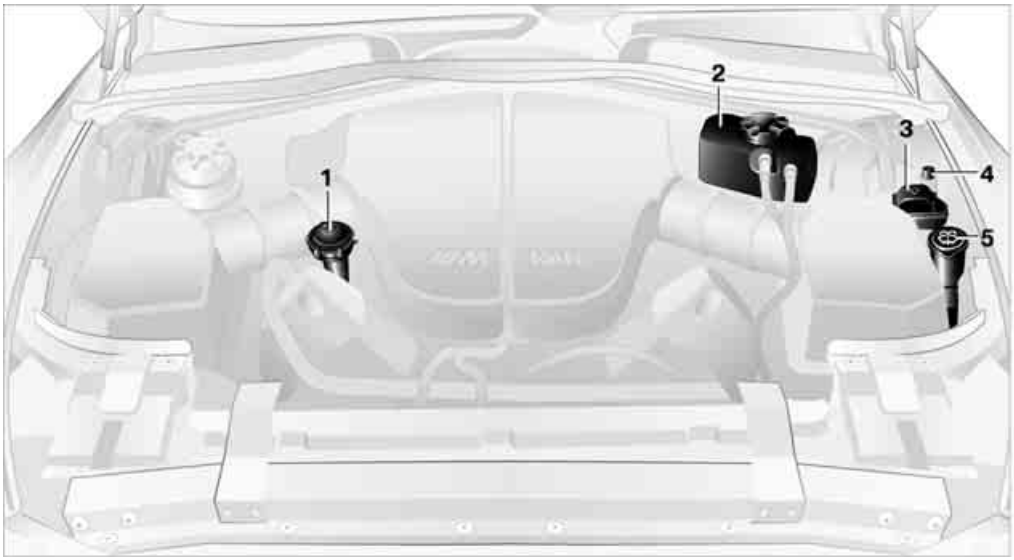
CarManuals2.com

Close the hood from a height of approx. 16 in/ 40 cm with momentum. It must be clearly heard to engage.

Make sure that the closing path of the hood is clear, otherwise injuries may result.
If you see any signs that the hood is not completely closed while driving your vehicle, you should stop at once and close it securely.◀

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 602 735 - © 08/09 BMW AG

Engine compartment



1 Filler neck for engine oil, refer to Adding engine oil

2 Expansion tank for coolant, refer to page 196

3 Starting-aid terminal, refer to page 213

4 Body ground/negative terminal

5 Filler neck for washer fluid of the headlamp and windshield cleaning systems, refer to page 63

CarManuals2.com

Engine oil

The engine oil consumption is dependent on driving style and driving conditions.

Checking engine oil level

Your vehicle is equipped with an electronic oil level check.

The oil level can be displayed when the engine is at operating temperature. Constant short-distance driving or a very sporty driving style can make it impossible for a measurement to be taken.

Displays in instrument cluster

You can display the current oil level in the instrument cluster.

1 Oil level

2 Maximum marking

3 Minimum marking

4 BC button

Press the button **4** in the turn signal lever repeatedly until the display for the oil level appears in the instrument cluster.

▷ Manual transmission: the engine oil level will be shown in the lower display.◀

The oil level must be between the two marks.

A new measurement is automatically taken after each engine start.

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 602 735 - © 08/09 BMW AG

Possible displays

CarManuals2.com

1 Oil level OK

2 Oil level is being determined.
This process can take approx. 1 minute when stopped on a level surface and approx. 5 minutes while driving.
If the engine oil has been topped off, the measurement of the oil level can take up to 30 minutes.

3 Oil level at minimum:
Add a maximum of 1 US quart/1 liter of engine oil at the next opportunity, refer to Adding engine oil below. Add at least 0.5 US quart/liter of oil; otherwise, the oil level check cannot reliably display the new oil level.
If the oil level displayed is below minimum, add engine oil immediately. Failure to do so may lead to engine damage.

4 Oil level too high

Have the vehicle checked immediately, otherwise engine damage may result if too much oil has been added.◀

5 No value can be determined at this time.
Engine is not yet at operating temperature.

Fast measurement

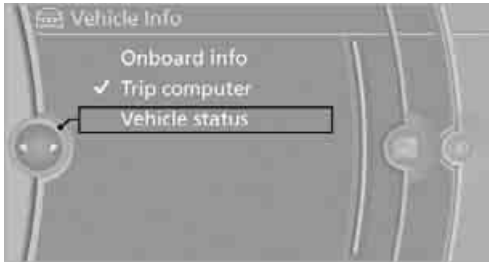
In addition to the automatic measurement, you can also determine the current oil level manually, e.g. after adding engine oil, but with a lower degree of measuring accuracy.

1. With the engine at operating temperature, i.e. after at least 6 miles/10 km of uninterrupted driving, park the vehicle in a horizontal position.
2. Allow the engine to run at idle.
3. Press the BC button on the turn signal lever repeatedly until the oil level display is shown in the instrument cluster.
4. Press the BC button for at least 2 seconds. The oil level is determined. A clock symbol is displayed during the measurement.
5. After approx. 1 minute the current oil level is displayed.

Displaying via iDrive

iDrive, for operating principle refer to page 16.

1. "Vehicle Info"
2. "Vehicle status"



3. "Engine oil level"

Possible messages

▷ "Engine oil level OK"

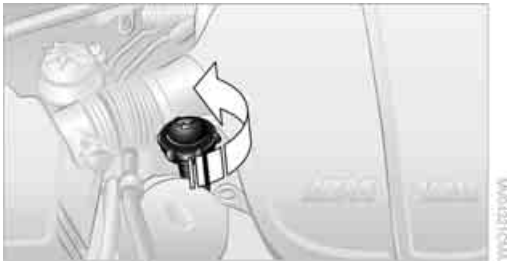
Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 602 735 - © 08/09 BMW AG

- "Measurement not possible at this time."
- "Measuring engine oil level...":
  This can take about 3 minutes if the car is at a standstill on a level surface and the engine is running, and about 5 minutes while the car is moving.
  If the engine oil has been topped off, the measurement of the oil level can take up to 30 minutes.
- "Engine oil level below minimum. Add 1 quart!":
  Add a maximum of 1 US quart/1 liter of engine oil at the next opportunity, refer also to Adding engine oil below. If the oil level displayed is below minimum, add engine oil immediately. Failure to do so may lead to engine damage.
- "Engine oil level too high! Have this checked.":

  Too much oil will harm the engine. Have the vehicle checked without delay.◀
- "Measurement inactive. Have this checked.":
  Do not add engine oil. You can continue your journey. Note the newly calculated distance remaining to the next oil service, refer to Service requirements on page 68. Have the system checked as soon as possible.

CarManuals2.com

Adding engine oil



Do not add oil until a value slightly above the minimum of 0.0 US quarts/liters is displayed by the oil level measurement. In this area a message is also shown on the Control Display.

Add oil within the next 125 miles/200 km, otherwise the engine could be damaged.

Add a maximum of 1 US quart/1 liter of oil; otherwise, the engine may be damaged by adding too much oil.
Add at least 0.5 US quart/0.5 liter of oil; otherwise, the oil level check cannot reliably display the current oil level.◀

Please conduct a fast measurement after adding engine oil to check the oil quantity added and to update the display.◀

Continuous exposure to used oil has caused cancer in laboratory testing.
For this reason, thoroughly wash exposed areas of skin with soap and water after such work. Keep oil, grease etc. out of reach of children and observe the warnings on the containers to prevent health risks.◀

Oil change

Have oil changed only at your BMW center or at a workshop that works according to BMW repair procedures with correspondingly trained personnel.

Approved engine oils

The quality of the engine oil selected has critical significance for the operation and service life of an engine. BMW continuously approves specific oils after confirming their suitability for use in its vehicles with extensive testing.

Do not use oil additives; under some circumstances, they can damage your engine.◀

Your BMW center will be happy to answer detailed questions on BMW High Performance Synthetic Oil or approved synthetic oils.◀

You can also call BMW of North America at 1-800-831-1117 or visit the website at www.bmwusa.com to obtain this information.

Viscosity grades

Viscosity is a measure of an oil's flow rating and is specified in SAE grades.

Approved oils belong to the SAE grade 10W-60.◀

Alternative oil grades

If BMW High Performance Synthetic Oil is unavailable, you can add small quantities of other synthetic oils between oil changes.
Only use oils with the following specifications:

- Viscosity
  preferred: SAE 10W-60;
  alternative: SAE 10W-40, SAE 5W-50 or SAE 10W-50
- Specification
  API SJ/CF, API SK/CF or higher

CarManuals2.com

Low temperatures

The oils used by BMW from the factory for your M6 can be used at virtually any ambient temperature. However, if the vehicle is operated for a longer period at temperatures below –4 °F / –20 °C, your BMW center will be happy to recommend a suitable oil.

BMW recommends Castrol

Coolant

Do not open the cooling system when the engine is hot. Escaping coolant can cause burns.◀

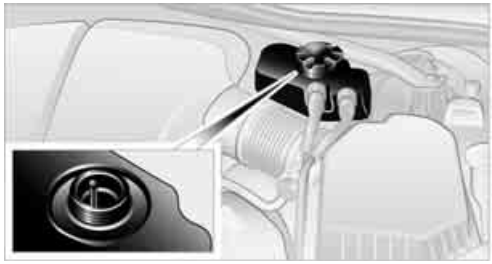
Coolant is composed of equal parts water and a coolant additive. Not all commercially available additives are suitable for your BMW. Ask your BMW center for suitable additives.

Only use suitable additives, otherwise engine damage may result. The additives present a health hazard.◀

Always observe all applicable environmental laws and regulations when disposing of used coolant additives.◀

Checking coolant level

1. Do not open the hood until the engine has cooled down.
2. Turn the cap of the expansion tank counterclockwise to allow any accumulated pressure to escape, then continue turning to open.
3. The coolant level is correct when the upper end of the float rod is at the same height as the upper edge of the filler neck, also refer to the drawing next to the filler neck.



4. If the coolant is low, slowly add coolant up to the specified level – do not overfill.
5. Turn the cap until it clicks.
6. Have the reason for the coolant loss eliminated as soon as possible.

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 602 735 - © 08/09 BMW AG

Maintenance

BMW maintenance system

The BMW maintenance system supports the preservation of the traffic and operating safety of your BMW. The service schedule also includes operations related to the vehicle's comfort and convenience features, such as replacement of the filters for the inside air. The ultimate objective is to ensure economical maintenance by providing the ideal service for your vehicle.

Should the day come when you decide to sell your BMW, a complete center service history will prove to be an asset of inestimable value.

CarManuals2.com

CBS Condition Based Service

Sensors and special algorithms take the different driving conditions of your BMW into account. Condition Based Service uses this to determine the current and future service requirements. By letting you define a service and maintenance regimen that reflects your own individual requirements, the system builds the basis for trouble-free driving.

You can set the Control Display to show remaining distances and times of selected maintenance intervals and legally mandated deadlines, refer to page 68:

- ▷ Engine oil
- ▷ Brake pads, front and rear separately
- ▷ Brake fluid
- ▷ Vehicle check
- ▷ Legally mandated inspections depending on local regulations

Service data in remote control

Your vehicle stores the information required maintenance continuously in the remote control during driving. After accessing the data stored in the remote control, your BMW Service Advisor can suggest precisely the right array of service procedures for your own individual vehicle. You should therefore hand over the remote control you last used to drive to the BMW Service Advisor when you take your vehicle in for service.

⚠ Make sure the date is set correctly, refer to page 70, otherwise the effectiveness of CBS Condition Based Service is not ensured.◀

Service and Warranty Information Booklet for US models and Warranty and Service Guide Booklet for Canadian models

Please consult your Service and Warranty Information Booklet for US models and Warranty and Service Guide Booklet for Canadian models for additional information on service requirements.

▷ BMW recommends that you have service and repair operations performed at your BMW center.
Take the time to ensure that these service procedures are confirmed by entries in your vehicle's Service and Warranty Information Booklet for US models and Warranty and Service Guide Booklet for Canadian models. These entries verify that your vehicle has received the specified regular maintenance.◀

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 602 735 - © 08/09 BMW AG

Socket for OBD Onboard Diagnostics interface

Components which are decisive for the exhaust-gas composition can be checked via the OBD socket with a device.

This socket is located under a cover on the left side of the driver's footwell, directly under the instrument panel.

Exhaust-gas values

The warning lamp lights up:
The vehicle emissions are raised. The trip can be continued. Have the vehicle checked as soon as possible.

Display of the previously described malfunction in Canadian models.

The lamp flashes under certain conditions. This is a sign of excessive misfiring of the engine. In this case you should reduce speed and drive to the nearest BMW center as soon as possible. Heavy engine misfiring causes serious damage to the emission-relevant components, especially the catalytic converter, within a short time.

▷ If the fuel filler cap is not properly tightened, the OBD system will assume that fuel vapor escapes. Then a display lights up. If the cap is then tightened, the display will go out within a few days.◀

Data recorders

Your vehicle may be equipped with one or several measuring and diagnosis modules, or with a device for recording or transmitting certain vehicle data or information. If you have also subscribed to BMW Assist, certain vehicle data can be transmitted or recorded to enable corresponding services.

CarManuals2.com

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 602 735 - © 08/09 BMW AG

Care

Car-care products

Regular cleaning and care make a significant contribution to retaining your BMW's value.

For the cleaning and care of your vehicle, BMW recommends using only products that BMW has approved for this purpose.

Your BMW center will be glad to advise you about products and services for the cleaning and care of your BMW.

Original BMW Care Products are materials tested, laboratory tested, and tested in actual use. They offer optimum care and protection for your vehicle.◀

Do not use cleaners that contain alcohol or solvents; they can damage your vehicle.◀

Cleaning agents can contain substances that are dangerous or pose health risks. You should therefore heed the warnings and hazard indications on the packaging. Open the doors or windows on your vehicle whenever cleaning the interior. Make sure there is sufficient ventilation in enclosed spaces. Use only products that are formulated for vehicle cleaning.◀

Exterior care

Washing your vehicle

In the winter months, it is especially important to ensure that the vehicle is washed on a regular basis. Otherwise, significant soiling and road salt can cause damage to the vehicle.◀

After washing the vehicle, apply the brakes briefly to dry them. Failure to do so may lead to a reduction in braking efficiency and also to corrosion of the brake rotors.◀

CarManuals2.com

Car washes

Give preference to cloth car washes.

Do not use high-pressure car washes because they can cause drops of water to penetrate in the vicinity of the windshield.◀

Before driving into the car wash, make sure that it is suitable for your BMW. Pay attention to the following points:

- Dimensions of your vehicle, refer to page 221.
- If necessary, fold in the outside rearview mirrors, refer to page 49.
- Maximum permissible tire width.
- The convertible top must not be treated with wax. Make sure that a program without wax or a special convertible program is available.

Avoid car washes with guide rail heights over 4 in/10 cm; otherwise, there is a danger of damaging chassis parts.◀

Preparations for driving into the car wash:

- Deactivate rain sensor to prevent unwanted wiper activation.
- Remove additional add-on parts, e.g. spoilers or phone antennas, if they could be damaged.

Sequential Manual Transmission

Before driving into the car wash, make sure the vehicle is able to roll by making sure to:

1. Insert the remote control into the ignition lock, even with Comfort Access.
2. Shift into transmission position N.
3. Release the parking brake.
4. Switch off the engine.
5. Leave the remote control in the ignition lock so that the vehicle can roll.

Steam jets/high-pressure washers

When using steam jets or high-pressure washers, ensure that you maintain sufficient clearance to the vehicle and do not exceed a temperature of 140 °F/60 °C.

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 602 735 - © 08/09 BMW AG

Insufficient distance or excessive pressure or temperature can damage parts of the vehicle or can result in water penetration. Follow the operating instructions for the high-pressure cleaning jets.◀

When using high-pressure cleaning jets, do not remain in one place for a long time and be sure to maintain a distance of at least 12 in/30 cm from sensors, e.g. Park Distance Control sensors or radar sensors.◀

Hand washing

When washing the vehicle by hand, use plenty of water and car washing shampoo. Clean the vehicle with gentle pressure using a sponge or a washing brush.

Before cleaning the windshield, deactivate the rain sensor or switch off the ignition to prevent unwanted wiper operation.◀

Follow local guidelines for washing vehicles by hand.◀

Headlamps

Do not rub dry and never use abrasives or strong solvents to clean the covers.

CarManuals2.com

Loosen dirt, e.g. insects, with shampoo or insect remover and wash away with plenty of water.

Use a window deicer to remove accumulated ice and snow, not a scraper.

Windows

Use a glass cleaner to clean the inside and outside surfaces of the windows and the glass surfaces of the mirrors.

Do not use quartz-containing cleansers to clean glass surfaces of the mirrors.◀

Convertible top care

The appearance and service life of the convertible top depend on proper care and operation.

Please follow these instructions:

- Never stow the convertible top in the convertible top compartment when it is wet or frozen, since this can cause water marks, mildew stains, and scuff marks.
- If water marks do occur on the headliner, remove them with a microfiber cloth and interior cleanser.
- When parking for long intervals in enclosed spaces, make sure there is sufficient ventilation.
- Remove bird droppings immediately because their caustic properties have a corrosive effect on the convertible top and can damage the rubber seals.

Do not use stain remover, paint thinner, solvents, gasoline, or the like to remove stains. These substances can damage the rubber coating. Improper care and cleaning can cause leaks to develop in the convertible top and its seams.◀

In the event of more serious soiling, use a special convertible top cleaner.
When doing so, follow the manufacturer's directions for use.

After three to five washings, treat the convertible top with sealant.

Caring for the vehicle finish

Regular care helps your vehicle retain its value and protects the paint from the long-term effects of aggressive substances.

Regionally occurring environmental factors can affect and damage vehicle finish. It is therefore important to tailor the frequency and extent of your car care accordingly.

Immediately remove particularly aggressive substances such as spilled fuel, oil, grease, brake fluid, tree resin, or bird droppings; otherwise, they may damage your paint.

Repairing paint damage

Repair stone damage or scratches immediately, depending on the severity of the damage, to prevent the formation of rust.◀

BMW recommends having paint damage professionally repaired using Genuine BMW finish materials in accordance with factory guidelines.

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 602 735 - © 08/09 BMW AG

Waxing

Sealant is required when water no longer beads on the clean surface of the paint. Use only products that contain carnauba wax or synthetic wax to seal your finish.

Rubber gaskets

Treat only with water or a rubber care product.

To avoid noise or damage, do not use products that contain silicone to care for rubber gaskets.◀

Chrome components

Particularly after exposure to road salt, thoroughly cleanse parts like the radiator grille, door handles, or window frames with plenty of water with shampoo added to it. For additional treatment, use chrome polish.

Alloy wheels

Depending on your system, braking can generate dust, which settles on the light-alloy wheels. Remove this dust regularly with acid-free wheel cleaner.

Do not use aggressive, acid-containing, strongly alkaline, or coarse cleansers and do not use steam cleaners at temperatures greater than 140 °F/60 °C, otherwise you may damage your vehicle.◀

Outside sensors

Sensors on the outside of the vehicle, such as Park Distance Control sensors or radar sensors, should be kept clean and free of ice to retain their full function.

Interior care

Upholstery/fabrics

Clean regularly with a vacuum cleaner in order to remove surface dirt.

In the event of more serious soiling such as beverage stains, use a soft sponge or a lint-free microfiber cloth in combination with suitable interior cleaners. Follow the instructions on the packaging.

Clean upholstery material over a large area extending out to the seams. Avoid intense friction.◀

Open Velcro fasteners on pants or other items of clothing can cause damage to the seat covering. Make sure that the Velcro fasteners are closed.◀

Leather/leather coverings

The leather used by BMW is a high quality natural product. Slight patterns in the grain are part of the typical properties of a natural leather.◀

Dust and dirt from the road chafe in pores and folds and result in considerable wear and cause the leather surface to become prematurely brittle. We therefore suggest that you clean the leather with a dust cloth or vacuum cleaner at regular intervals.

Particularly with light-colored leather, make sure to clean it regularly since it has a greater tendency to become soiled.

CarManuals2.com

Treat the leather twice a year with a leather lotion since dirt and grease harm the protective layer of the leather.

Carpets/cargo area

Carpeting, floor mats, and luggage compartment rugs and paneling can be cleaned with a vacuum or in the event of more serious soiling, cleansed with an interior cleaner.

Floor mats and luggage compartment rugs can be removed for cleaning. When inserting into place, make sure that the seat rails do not protrude over the floor mats; otherwise floor mats can be damaged.

Fluff on new floor mats is a result of the production process and can be removed by repeated vacuuming.

Plastic components inside

Clean the glass cover of the instrument panel, imitation leather surfaces, lamp lenses, and

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 602 735 - © 08/09 BMW AG

matte components with water and, if necessary, a solvent-free plastic cleaner.

Fine wooden components

Use a damp cloth to clean fine wooden trim panels and components. Follow up by drying with a soft cloth.

Safety belts

Dirty belt straps impede the reeling action and thus have a negative impact on safety.

Chemical cleaning
Do not clean chemically, as this may destroy the webbing.◀

Inside sensors

Clean inside sensors such as those of the High-beam Assistant using a lint-free cloth moistened with glass cleaner.

Displays

Clean displays like the radio or the Control Display using a display-cleaning cloth or a soft, nonabrasive lint-free cloth.

Avoid using excessive pressure when cleaning displays; otherwise, you could damage them.◀

CarManuals2.com

Never use chemical-based cleansers or household scouring products. Keep all liquids away from the equipment. Otherwise corrosion or damage to surfaces or electrical components can occur.◀

CD/DVD drives

Do not use cleaning CDs; they can damage parts of the player.◀

Storing your vehicle

When storing your vehicle for longer than three months, please seek the advice of your BMW center or a workshop that works in accordance with BMW guidelines.

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 602 735 - © 08/09 BMW AG

Replacing components

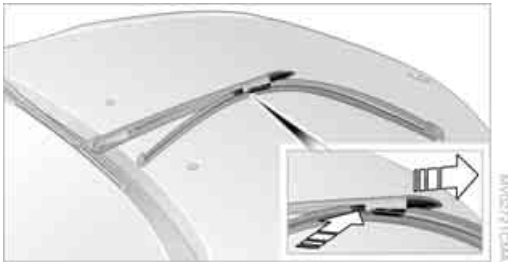
Onboard vehicle tool kit

Coupe

Convertible

The onboard tool kit is located in the luggage compartment under the floor mat.

Replacing wiper blades



1. Fold the wiper arm out and grasp firmly.
2. Press the safety tabs together while sliding the wiper blade toward the front to disengage it.
3. Mount the new wiper blade and slide in until it is heard to engage.

Lamps and bulbs

Lamps and bulbs make an essential contribution to vehicle safety. You must be duly diligent in replacing them. If you are not familiar with the specified procedures, have the corresponding work carried out at your BMW center.

▷ Never touch the glass of new bulbs with your bare fingers, as even minute amounts of contamination will burn into the bulb's surface and reduce its service life. Use a clean cloth, napkin, etc., or hold the bulb by its metal socket.◀

A selection of replacement bulbs is available at your BMW center.

⚠ Whenever you perform any work on the electrical system, turn off the systems/consumers involved to prevent short circuits from occurring. To avoid possible injury or equipment damage when replacing bulbs, observe any instructions provided by the bulb manufacturer.◀

CarManuals2.com

For information on how to care for the headlamps, please follow the instructions on page 199.

▷ For bulbs for which changing is not described, and for checking and adjusting headlamp aim, please contact your BMW center.◀

Light-emitting diodes LEDs

Light-emitting diodes installed behind translucent lenses serve as the light source for many of the controls and displays in your vehicle. These light-emitting diodes, which operate using a concept similar to that applied in conventional lasers, are officially designated as Class 1 light-emitting diodes.

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 602 735 - © 08/09 BMW AG

Do not remove the covers, and never stare into the unfiltered light for several hours, as irritation of the retina could result.◀

Xenon lamps

The service life of these bulbs is very long and the probability of a failure is very low, provided that they are not switched on and off an unusual number of times.

Have work on the xenon lighting system performed only by your BMW center or a workshop that works according to BMW repair procedures with correspondingly trained personnel. Due to the high voltage present in the system, there is a danger of fatal injuries when work is carried out improperly.◀

Parking lamps, roadside parking lamps, daytime running lamps

The illustration shows the left-hand side of the engine compartment.

35-watt bulb, H 8

1. Remove the cover cap **1** by pressing the tab and removing the cover cap upward.
2. Turn the bulb holder to the left and remove.
3. Remove and replace the bulb.

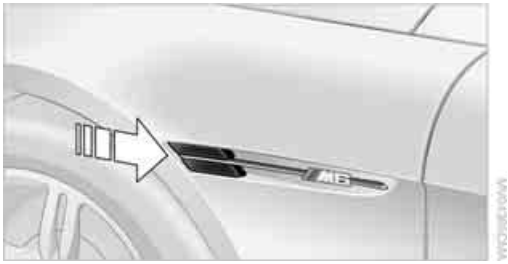
Always wear gloves and eye protection – the atmosphere inside the H8 bulb is pressurized. Otherwise there is a danger of injuries if the bulb is accidentally damaged during replacement.◀

Side-mounted turn signals

CarManuals2.com

5-watt bulb, WY5W

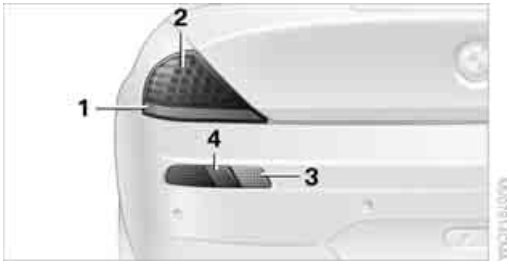
1. Press against the front edge of the lamp with the tip of your finger, then push it to the rear, release the snap connection at the front and take it off the trim strip.



2. Turn the bulb holder to the left by 90° and remove.
3. Remove and replace the bulb.

Tail lamps

The roadside parking lamps, tail lamps, brake lamps, and turn signals use LED technology. The backup lamps are equipped with long-life bulbs. Please contact a BMW center in case of a malfunction.◀



1 Turn signal

2 Roadside parking, tail and brake lamps

3 Reflector

4 Backup lamp

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 602 735 - © 08/09 BMW AG

License plate lamps

5-watt bulb, W5W

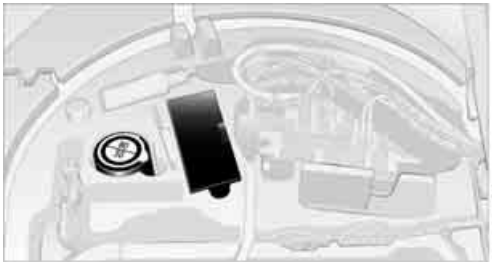
1. Push a screwdriver from the left under the lamp and pry out the lamp toward the right.
2. Turn the bulb holder to the left by 90° and remove.
3. Remove and replace the bulb.

Repairing flat tire with M Mobility System

To repair a flat tire, an M Mobility System is provided in the BMW M6. Using this system you can apply a sealant in the inside of the tire, seal off the damaged area, restore the tire inflation pressure and then continue driving.

Safety measures in case of a breakdown: Park the vehicle as far as possible from passing traffic and on solid ground. Switch on the hazard warning flashers.
Apply the parking brake and shift into first gear or reverse with the manual transmission, or move the selector lever into a drive position with the sequential transmission. Have all vehicle occupants get out of the vehicle and ensure that they remain outside the immediate area in a safe place, such as behind a guardrail.
If a warning triangle* or portable hazard warning lamp* is required, set it up on the roadside at an appropriate distance from the rear of the vehicle. Comply with all safety guidelines and regulations.◀

Preparation



The M Mobility System is located in the cargo area under the floor panel flap.

Do not remove foreign bodies which have penetrated the tire if possible.

Corresponding information on using the M Mobility System is also provided on the device.◀

Before using the M Mobility System, observe the information on the sealant bottle.◀

Pull the sticker for the speed limit off the sealant bottle and apply it to the steering wheel.

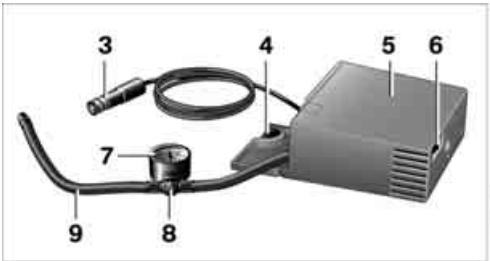
Please observe the best-by date on the sealant bottle.◀

CarManuals2.com

The M Mobility System consists of

1 Sealant bottle and sticker with speed limit
2 Filling hose from sealant bottle to wheel

Model with pressure gauge on hose*



3 Connector and cable for lighter socket

4 Mounting for sealing bottle

5 Compressor

6 On/Off switch

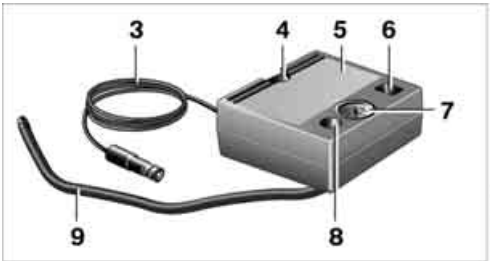
7 Pressure gauge for indicating tire inflation pressure

8 Screw on pressure gauge for reducing tire inflation pressure

9 Connecting hose for connecting compressor and sealant bottle or compressor and wheel

Connector, cable and connecting hose are stored in the compressor housing.

Model with pressure gauge integrated in housing*



3 Connector and cable for lighter socket

4 Mounting for sealing bottle

5 Compressor

6 On/Off switch

7 Pressure gauge for indicating tire inflation pressure

CarManuals2.com

8 Button for reducing tire inflation pressure

9 Connecting hose for connecting compressor and sealant bottle or compressor and wheel

Connector, cable and connecting hose are stored on underside of compressor.

Using M Mobility System

To repair a flat tire with the M Mobility System, proceed as follows:

▷ Fill sealant into wheel, refer to page 206.

▷ Distribute sealant, refer to page 207.

▷ Produce tire inflation pressure, refer to page 207.

Filling sealant into wheel

Strictly comply with the specified order, otherwise highly pressurized sealant could escape.◀

1. Shake sealant bottle.
2. Screw hose **9** onto connection of sealant bottle.
3. For model with pressure gauge on hose: Make sure that screw **8** on pressure gauge is closed.
4. Screw dust cap off valve of defective wheel and screw filling hose **2** of sealant bottle onto valve.
5. Insert sealant bottle on compressor housing so that it is positioned upright.

6. Make sure that the device is switched off, position 0.
7. Insert connector **3** into lighter socket in vehicle interior, refer to page 104.
8. With the ignition switched on, refer to page 55:

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 602 735 - © 08/09 BMW AG

Switch on the device and allow to run for approx. 3 minutes to fill wheel with sealant. It is not important what inflation pressure the tire has after filling.

9. Switch off device.
10. Remove connecting hose from connection of sealant bottle and tire valve.
Stow the M Mobility System in the vehicle again.

Distributing sealant

Immediately drive approx. 2 miles/3 km so that sealant is evenly distributed in tire.

Do not exceed a maximum speed of 35 mph/60 km/h. Do not drop below 12 mph/20 km/h if possible.◀

Producing tire inflation pressure

1. After approx. 2 miles/3 km, stop at suitable location.
2. Screw compressor hose **9** directly onto tire valve.
3. Insert connector **3** in lighter socket in vehicle interior.
4. Correct tire inflation pressure to 29 psi/ 200 kPa. With the ignition switched on:
   - ▷ Increase inflation pressure: switch on device, position I. To check currently set inflation pressure, briefly switch off device.

   Do not allow compressor to run longer than 10 minutes, otherwise the device will overheat and may be damaged.◀

   - ▷ Reduce inflation pressure: press button **8** or turn screw **8** on pressure gauge.

If the inflation pressure is not held, drive the vehicle again, refer to Distributing sealant. Then repeat steps 1 to 4 once.
Using the M Mobility System can be ineffective with tire damage from a size of approx. 0.16 in/ 4 mm. Please contact the nearest BMW center, refer to page 213, or a workshop that works according to BMW repair procedures with correspondingly trained personnel if the tire cannot be made ready for driving with the M Mobility System.◀

CarManuals2.com

The tire inflation pressure must be at least 29 psi/200 kPa. Otherwise do not continue driving.◀

Continue driving

Do not exceed the permissible maximum speed of 50 mph/80 km/h, otherwise accidents can occur.◀

Reinitialize the Flat Tire Monitor.
For details, refer to page 80.
Have the defective tire and the sealant bottle of the M Mobility System replaced as soon as possible.◀

Changing wheels*

Safety precautions in the event of a flat tire or wheel change: Park the vehicle as far as possible from passing traffic and on solid ground. Switch on the hazard warning flashers. Apply the parking brake and shift into first gear or reverse with the manual transmission, or move the selector lever into a drive position with the sequential transmission.
Have all vehicle occupants get out of the vehicle and ensure that they remain outside the immediate area in a safe place, such as behind a guardrail.
If a warning triangle* or portable hazard warning lamp* is required, set it up on the roadside at an appropriate distance from the rear of the vehicle. Comply with all safety guidelines and regulations.
Change the wheel only on a level, firm surface which is not slippery. The vehicle or the jack could slip to the side if you attempt to raise the vehicle on a soft or slippery surface such as snow, ice, tiles, etc.
Position the jack on a firm support surface.
Do not use a wooden block or similar object as a support base for the jack, as this would prevent it from extending to its full support height and reduce its load-carrying capacity.
To avoid serious or fatal injury: never lie under

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 602 735 - © 08/09 BMW AG

the vehicle, and never start the engine while it is supported by the jack.◀

What you will need

To avoid rattling noises later on, note the positions of the tools before removing them, then return them to their initial positions after completing work.

1 Chock*

2 Vehicle jack*

3 Lug wrench*

The tools are located in the hollow of the spare wheel.

Spare wheel*

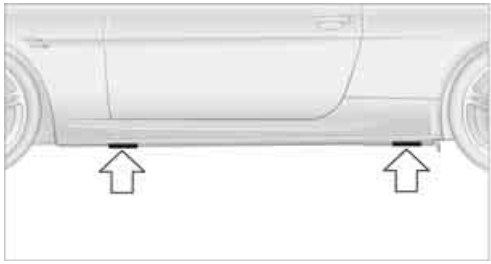
1. Fold up the convertible top compartment floor, refer to Convertible: increasing luggage compartment capacity, page 33.
2. Pull back lock **1**, fold open tensioning lock **2** completely and loosen the belt **3**.

3. Remove the cover **4**.
4. Take the tool mounting out of the spare wheel.
5. Remove the spare wheel.

Preparing wheel change

1. Observe the safety precautions above.
2. Prevent the vehicle from rolling:
   Place the chock behind the front wheel on the other side of the vehicle, or on inclines, in front of this wheel. On steeply inclined roads, always secure the vehicle against rolling.
3. Loosen the lug bolts a half turn.

Jacking up vehicle



The jacking points for the car jack are located in the positions shown.

1. Position the vehicle jack at the jacking point closest to the wheel so that the entire surface of the jack base rests on the ground perpendicularly beneath the jacking point.

   ⚠ The vehicle jack is designed for changing wheels only. Do not attempt to raise another vehicle model with it or to raise any load of any kind. To do so could cause accidents and personal injury.◀

2. Guide the jack head into the rectangular recess of the jacking point when cranking up, refer to illustration detail.

3. Jack the vehicle up until the wheel you are changing is raised from the ground.

CarManuals2.com

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 602 735 - © 08/09 BMW AG

Mounting a wheel

1. Unscrew the lug bolts and remove the wheel.
2. Remove accumulations of mud or dirt from the mounting surfaces of the wheel and hub. Also clean the lug bolts.
3. Position the new wheel or spare wheel. Secure the wheel by screwing at least two lug bolts into opposite bolt holes.
   When you mount wheels other than Genuine BMW light-alloy wheels, different lug bolts may also be required.
4. Screw in the remaining lug bolts. Tighten all the bolts securely in a diagonal pattern.
5. Lower the vehicle and remove the jack from beneath the vehicle.

After mounting

1. Tighten the lug bolts in a diagonal pattern.

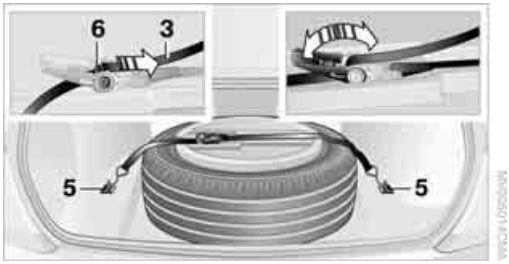
   To ensure safety, always have the lug bolts checked with a calibrated torque wrench as soon as possible to ensure that they are tightened to the specified torque. Otherwise, incorrectly tightened lug bolts are a hidden safety risk. The tightening torque is 88.5 lb ft/120 Nm.◀
2. Check and correct the tire inflation pressure at the earliest opportunity.

   Protect valve stems with valve stem seal caps against dirt and contamination. Dirt in valve stems is a frequent source of gradual air loss.◀
3. Initialize the Flat Tire Monitor, refer to page 80, and the Sequential Manual Transmission, refer to After changing wheels/tires on page 190.
4. Replace the damaged tire as soon as possible and have the new wheel/tire balanced.

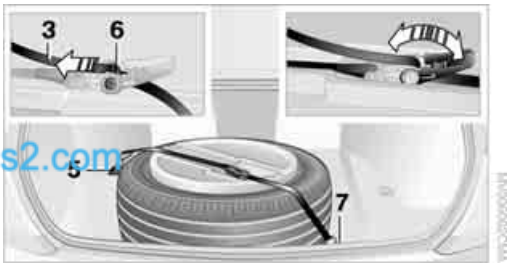
Stowing wheel and tools

Convertible: a rear wheel can only be transported with the convertible top compartment floor folded up.◀

1. Lay the wheel in the tool mounting.
2. Lay the cover on the mounting.
3. Coupe: center the wheel and cover relative to the lashing eyes **5**.
   Convertible: slide the wheel as far as possible to the left and to the rear.
4. Coupe: hook the belt into the lashing eyes **5** and lay it in the belt guide which runs in the center of the lid.



Convertible: hook the belt into the lashing eyes **5** and **7** and lay it in the belt guide of the lid which runs offset.



5. Completely open the tensioning lock.
6. Thread the belt **3** through the axis **6** of the tensioning lock without twisting it and tension it by hand.
7. Tighten the belt firmly with the tensioning lock by opening and closing the lock several times.
8. Fold the tensioning lock closed and stow the protruding belt end.

Driving with spare wheel

With certain wheel-and-tire combinations the size of the spare wheel differs from that of the other wheels. The spare wheel is equivalent to them in all load and speed ranges. However, to restore the original state, the nor-

CarManuals2.com

mal wheel should be remounted as soon as possible.◀

Vehicle battery

Battery care

The battery is 100% maintenance-free, i.e., the electrolyte will last for the life of the battery when the vehicle is operated in a temperate climate.
Your BMW center will be glad to advise in all matters concerning the battery.

Charging battery

Only charge the battery in the vehicle via the terminals in the engine compartment with the engine switched off. Connections, refer to Jump starting on page 213.

Disposal

Have old batteries disposed of by your BMW center or bring them a recycling center. Maintain the battery in an upright position for transport and storage. Always restrain the battery to prevent it from tipping over during transport.◀

Power failure

Following a temporary power failure, e.g. due to a discharged battery, the use of some equipment will be restricted, requiring its reinitialization. In the same way, individual settings are lost and must be updated again:

- ▷ Seat, mirror and steering wheel* memory
  The positions must be stored again, refer to page 45.
- ▷ Time and date
  Must be updated again, refer to page 69.
- ▷ Radio
  Radio stations need to be stored again, refer to page 140.
- ▷ Navigation system
  You must wait until the system becomes functional again, refer to page 116.
- ▷ Power windows
  The pinch prevention system for the power windows must be reinitialized, refer to page 36.

▷ Talk to your BMW center before placing the stored vehicle back in service. ◀

Fuses

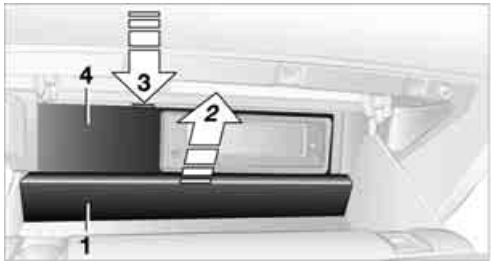
Never attempt to repair a blown fuse and do not replace a defective fuse with a substitute of another color or amperage rating, as this could lead to a circuit overload, ultimately resulting in a fire in the vehicle.◀

Spare fuses and a pair of plastic tweezers are located in the compartment for the onboard tool kit, refer to page 203.

Information on fuse allocation is located below the bracket for the onboard tool kit, see below.

In glove compartment

1. Press the button on the back in the center of partition **1** and pull out the partition upward, arrow **2**.

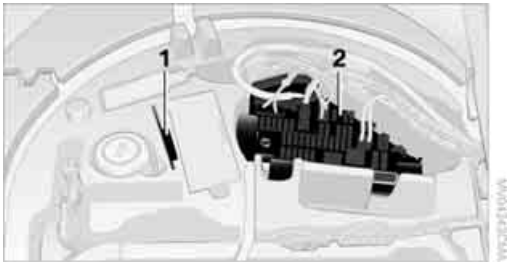


2. Press the coupling downward, arrow **3**, and fold the lid **4** forward.

CarManuals2.com

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 602 735 - © 08/09 BMW AG

In cargo area



Fold the cover under the floor mat upward and remove the bracket for the onboard tool kit. Information on fuse allocation **1** and additional fuses **2** are provided there.

CarManuals2.com

Giving and receiving assistance

Emergency request

Requirements

- ▷ BMW Assist is activated.
  Activating BMW Assist, refer to page 178.
- ▷ Radio readiness is activated.
- ▷ The BMW Assist system is logged on to a mobile phone network.
- ▷ The BMW Assist system is functional.
- ▷ Full preparation package mobile phone. With this equipment, an Emergency Request is still possible when no mobile phone is paired with the vehicle.

Once your BMW Assist subscription expires, the BMW Assist system can be deactivated by a BMW center without you having to visit a workshop. If the BMW Assist system has been deactivated, Emergency Requests are not possible. The BMW Assist system can be reactivated by a BMW center after signing a new contract.

Initiating an Emergency Request

1. Briefly press protective cover to open.
   With some vehicle equipment packages or in the Convertible, the arrangement of the switches and indicator lamps may differ somewhat.

2. Press the SOS button until the LED in the button lights up.

CarManuals2.com

As soon as the voice connection to the BMW Assist Response Center has been established, the LED flashes.

When the Emergency Request is received at the BMW Assist Response Center, the BMW Assist Response Center contacts you and arranges for additional steps to help you. Even if you are unable to respond, the BMW Assist Response Center can take further steps to help you under certain circumstances.

If conditions allow, remain in the vehicle until the connection has been established. You will then be able to provide a detailed description of the situation.

In the event of a BMW Assist emergency call, data that are used to determine the necessary rescue measures, such as the current position of your vehicle if it can be established, are transmitted to the BMW Assist Response Center.

If the LED is flashing but the BMW Assist Response Center cannot be heard over the hands-free system, it is possible that the hands-free system is malfunctioning. The BMW Assist Response Center may still be able to hear you, though.

Under certain conditions, an Emergency Request is automatically initiated immediately after a severe accident. Automatic Collision Notification is not affected by pressing the button.

⚠ For technical reasons, the Emergency Request cannot be guaranteed under unfavorable conditions.◀

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 602 735 - © 08/09 BMW AG

Warning triangle*

The warning triangle is located on the left-hand side in the luggage compartment.

First aid kit*

The first aid kit is located in the filler element of the rear seat backrest.

1. Press the button downward and pull the filler element forward.

2. Take out first aid kit.

To refit the filler element, insert the two bottom tabs into the strip and press the filler element back into place. Make sure that you do not damage the rear seat upholstery.◀

Some of the articles contained in the first aid kit have a limited service life. Therefore, check the expiration dates of the contents regularly and replace the contents concerned in good time if necessary.

Roadside Assistance*

Roadside Assistance of the BMW Group offers you assistance in the event of a breakdown around the clock, including on weekends and public holidays.

The phone numbers of Roadside Assistance in your home country can be found in the Contact brochure.

With BMW Assist you can contact Roadside Assistance of the BMW Group for assistance in the event of a breakdown directly via iDrive, refer to page 177.

Jump starting

When your battery is discharged, you can use two jumper cables to start your BMW with power from the battery in a second vehicle. You can also use the same method to help start another vehicle. Use only jumper cables with fully-insulated clamp handles.

To avoid the risk of potentially fatal injury, always avoid all contact with electrical components while the engine is running. Carefully adhere to the following sequence, both to prevent damage to one or both vehicles, and to guard against possible personal injuries.◀

Preparation

1. Check whether the battery of the other vehicle has a voltage of 12 Volts and approximately the same capacitance in Ah. This information can be found on the battery.
2. Switch off the engine of the assisting vehicle.
3. Switch off any electrical systems and components in both vehicles.

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 602 735 - © 08/09 BMW AG

There must not be any contact between the bodies of the two vehicles, otherwise there is a danger of shorting.◀

Connecting jumper cables

To avoid personal injury from sparks, follow this sequence when connecting jumper cables.◀

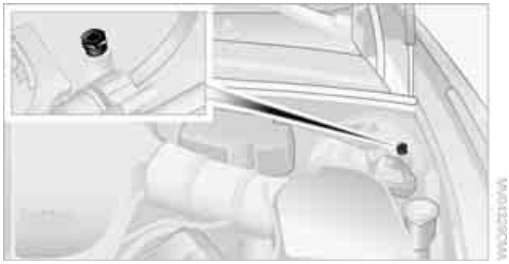
In your BMW M6, the so-called jump-starting terminal for jump starting in the engine compartment serves as a positive terminal for the battery, also refer to engine compartment overview on page 193. The cover cap is marked with a +.

1. Fold open the cover of the BMW jump-starting terminal. To do so, pull the tab.

CarManuals2.com

2. Attach one end of the jumper cable plus/+ to the positive terminal of the battery or a jump-starting terminal of the vehicle providing assistance.
3. Attach the second end of the cable to the positive terminal of the battery or to a starting-aid terminal of the vehicle to be started.
4. Attach one end of the jumper cable minus/– to the negative terminal of the battery or to an engine or body ground of the assisting vehicle.

   Your BMW M6 has a special nut as body ground or negative terminal.



5. Attach the second end of the cable to the negative terminal of the battery or to the engine or body ground of the vehicle to be started.

Starting engine

1. Start the engine on the assisting vehicle and allow it to run at idle for several minutes at slightly increased speed.
2. Start the engine on the other vehicle in the usual way.
   If the first starting attempt is not successful, wait a few minutes before another attempt in order to allow the discharged battery to recharge.
3. Let the engines run for a few minutes.
4. Disconnect the jumper cables by reversing the connection sequence.

Check the battery and recharge if necessary.

Never use spray fluids to start the engine.◀

Tow-starting and towing

Observe applicable laws and regulations for tow-starting and towing.◀

Do not transport any passengers other than the driver in a vehicle that is being towed.◀

Using tow fitting

The threaded tow fitting is stored in the tool kit mounted on the inside of the luggage compartment under the floor mat, refer to page 203, and

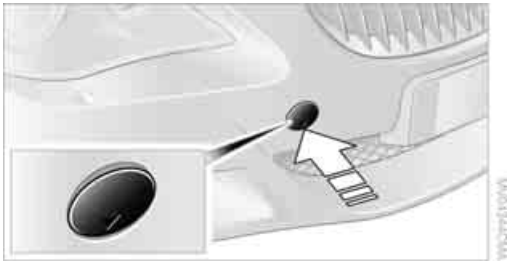
Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 602 735 - © 08/09 BMW AG

should always remain in the vehicle. It can be screwed in at the front or rear of the BMW.

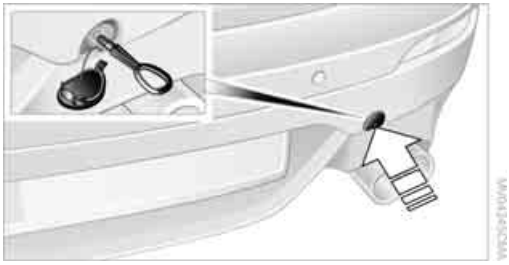
Only use the tow fitting that comes with the vehicle and screw it in as far as possible. Use the tow fitting for towing only on roads. Avoid lateral loading of the tow fitting, e.g. do not lift the vehicle by the tow fitting. Otherwise damage to the tow fitting and the vehicle can occur.◀

Access to screw thread

Front: press the arrow symbol on the cover in the bumper.



Rear: press the arrow symbol on the cover while prying out the cover upward by hand.



Being towed

Make sure that the ignition is switched on, refer to page 55, otherwise the low beams, tail lamps, turn signals and windshield wipers would not be available. Do not tow the vehicle with the rear axle raised, as otherwise the steering can turn to the left or right.When the engine is stopped, there is no power assist. This then requires increased effort for braking and steering.◀

Switch on the hazard warning flashers depending on the local regulations. If the electrical system fails, mark the vehicle to be towed, e.g. with a sign or warning triangle in the rear window.

Manual transmission

Gearshift lever in neutral position.

Sequential Manual Transmission with Drivelogic

Make sure that selector lever position N is engaged with the ignition switched on, as otherwise the engine can be damaged during towing.◀

Towing methods

Do not lift vehicle by tow fitting or body and chassis parts; otherwise, damage may result.◀

In some countries, towing with tow bars or ropes in public traffic is not permitted. Familiarize yourself with the regulations on towing in the respective country.

With tow bar

The towing vehicle may not be lighter than the vehicle to be towed, otherwise it will not be possible to reliably control vehicle response.◀

The tow fittings used should be on the same side on both vehicles. Should it prove impossible to avoid mounting the tow bar at an offset angle, please observe the following:

- ▷ Clearance and maneuvering capability will be sharply limited during cornering.
- ▷ When mounted at an angle, the tow bar will exert lateral forces, tending to push the vehicle sideways.

Only attach the tow bar to the tow fittings, as attachment to other vehicle parts can lead to damage.◀

With tow rope

When starting off in the towing vehicle, make sure that the tow rope is taut.

To avoid jerking and the associated stresses on vehicle components when towing, always use nylon ropes or nylon straps.

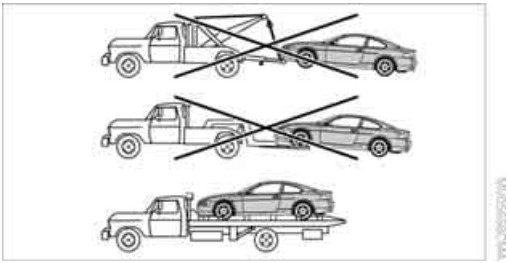
CarManuals2.com

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 602 735 - © 08/09 BMW AG

Only attach tow ropes to the tow fittings, as attachment to other vehicle parts can lead to damage.◀

With tow truck

Do not tow the vehicle with only the front or rear axle raised, as otherwise the engine may be damaged or the steering can turn to the left or right.◀



Have the vehicle transported on a flatbed surface only.

Tow-starting

Do not tow-start the vehicle if possible, but instead start the engine by means of jump starting, refer to page 213. Vehicles equipped with a catalytic converter should only be tow-started when the engine is cold.

CarManuals2.com

Manual transmission

1. Switch on the hazard warning flashers, comply with country-specific regulations.
2. Switch on the ignition, refer to page 55.
3. Shift into 3rd gear.
4. Tow-start with the clutch completely depressed and slowly release the clutch. After the engine starts, immediately depress the clutch again completely.
5. Stop at a suitable location, remove the tow bar or rope and switch off the hazard warning flashers.
6. Have the vehicle checked.

Sequential Manual Transmission with Drivelogic

1. Switch on the hazard warning flashers, comply with country-specific regulations.
2. Switch on the ignition, refer to page 55.
3. Tow-start in selector lever position N.
4. Move the selector lever into the drive position and pull toward + within 2 seconds. The correct gear will be selected and engaged automatically.
5. Stop at a suitable location, remove the tow bar or rope and switch off the hazard warning flashers.
6. Have the vehicle checked.

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 602 735 - © 08/09 BMW AG

CarManuals2.com

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 602 735 - © 08/09 BMW AG

CarManuals2.com

Reference

This chapter contains the technical data, the short commands of the voice activation system, and the index that will direct you as quickly as possible to the information you are looking for.

CarManuals2.com

Technical data

Engine data

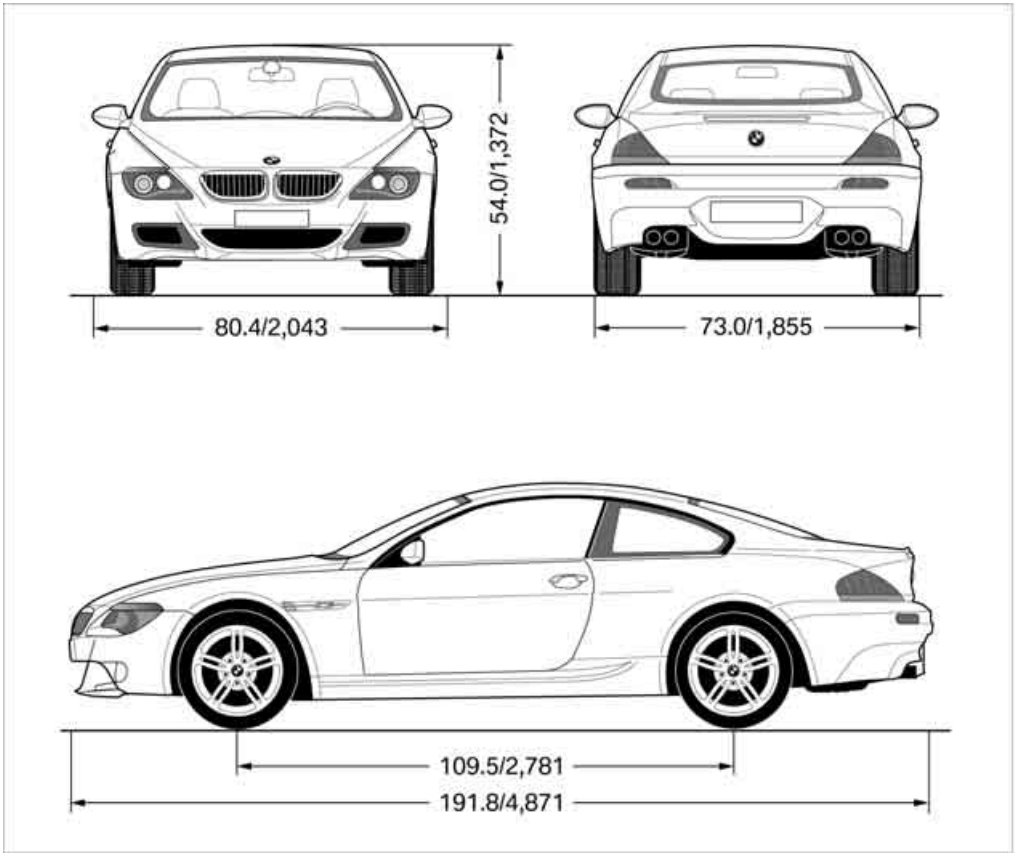
		M6
Displacement	cu in/cm³	305.1/4,999
No. of cylinders		10
Maximum output	hp	500
at engine speed	rpm	7,750
Maximum torque	lb ft/Nm	383/520
at engine speed	rpm	6,100

CarManuals2.com

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 602 735 - © 08/09 BMW AG

Dimensions

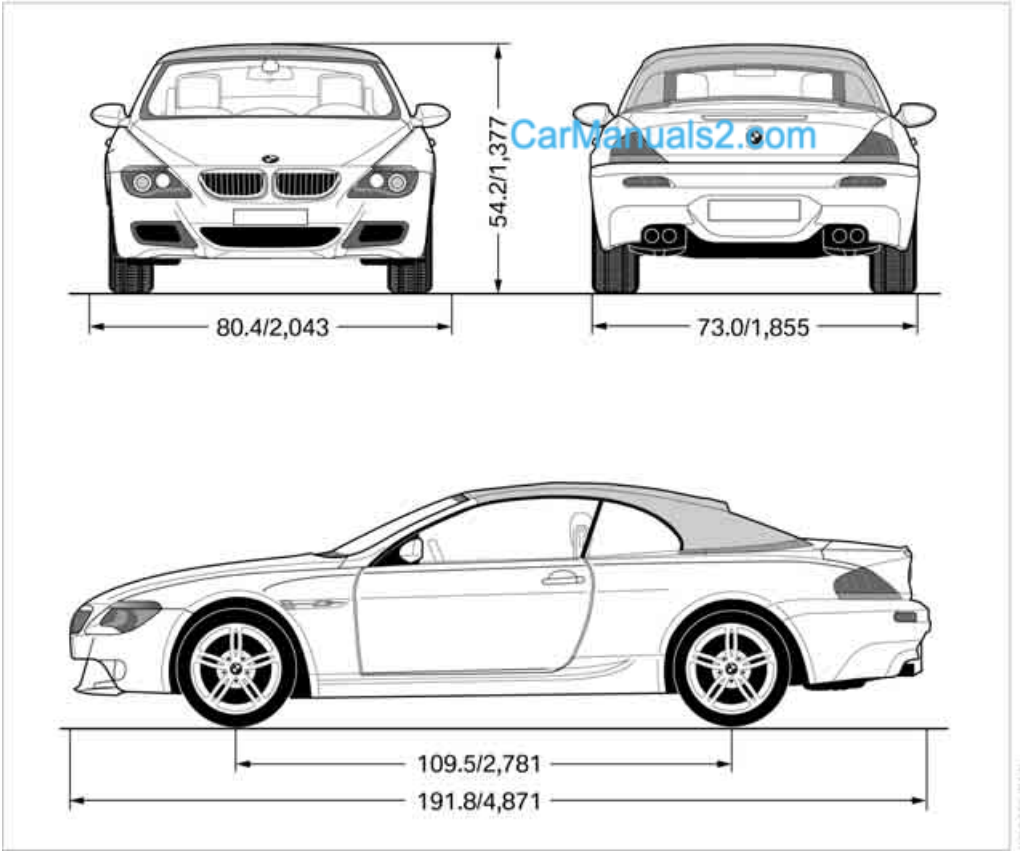
Coupe



All dimensions given in inches/mm. Smallest turning circle diam.: 41.0 ft/12.5 m

CarManuals2.com

Convertible



CarManuals2.com

All dimensions given in inches/mm. Smallest turning circle diam.: 41 ft/12.5 m

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 602 735 - © 08/09 BMW AG

Weights

		M6 Coupe	M6 Convertible
Curb weight	lbs./kg	3,909/1,773	4,398/1,995
Approved gross vehicle weight	lbs./kg	4,850/2,200	5,247/2,380
Load	lbs./kg	941/427	849/385
Approved front axle load	lbs./kg	2,403/1,090	2,469/1,120
Approved rear axle load	lbs./kg	2,646/1,200	2,844/1,290
Cargo area capacity	cu ft/l	15.9/450	10.6/300
▷ with raised convertible top compartment floor, refer to page 33	cu ft/l	–	12.4/350

Never exceed either the approved axle loads or the gross vehicle weight.

Capacities

			Notes
Fuel tank	US gal/liters	approx. 18.5/70	Fuel grade: page 185
including reserve of:	US gal/liters	approx. 4/15	
Window and headlamp washer system	US quarts/liters	approx. 5.3/5	For more details: page 63

CarManuals2.com

Short commands of voice activation system*

With short commands you can run certain functions directly, regardless of which menu item is selected. Here are the important short commands for the voice activation system.

Useful short commands

Function	Command
Opening the music collection	›Music collection‹
Tone control	›Tone‹
Selecting the settings	›Settings‹
Opening the computer	›Onboard info‹
Opening the contacts*	›Contacts‹
Displaying the phone book*	›Phonebook‹
Opening BMW Assist*	›B M W Assist‹
Opening the home address*	›Home address‹
Opening destination entry*	›Enter address‹
Opening destination guidance*	›Guidance‹

CarManuals2.com

CD/Multimedia

CD/DVD drive

Function	Command
Selecting a CD	›Select C D‹
Selecting a CD and track	›C D ... track ...‹ e.g. CD 3 track 5
Selecting a track	›C D track ...‹ e.g. track 5
Opening the CD and Multimedia menu	›C D and multimedia‹
CD and DVD	›C D and D V D‹
CD and DVD menu	›C D and D V D‹
Selecting a DVD	›D V D ...‹
Entertainment details on the split screen	›Entertainment details‹

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 602 735 - © 08/09 BMW AG

Music collection

Function	Command
Calling up the current playback	›Current playback‹
Opening the music collection	›Music collection‹
Searching for music; opening the menu	›Music search‹
Playing back the most frequently played tracks	›Top fifty‹

CarManuals2.com

External devices

Function	Command
Opening external devices	›External devices‹

TV

Function	Command
Calling up the TV	›T V‹

Tone control

Function	Command
Opening the tone control	›Tone‹

Radio

FM

Function	Command
Calling up the radio	›Radio‹
Calling up FM	›F M‹
Opening manual search	›Manual search‹
Selecting the frequency range	›Select frequency‹
To select radio station	›Station …‹ e.g. W-PLJ
Calling up a station	›Select station‹ e.g. W-PLJ

AM

Function	Command
Calling up AM	›A M‹
Opening manual search	›Manual search‹

DAB

Function	Command
To select radio station	›Station …‹ e.g. W-PLJ

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 602 735 - © 08/09 BMW AG

Weather Band

Function	Command
Selecting the Weather Band	›Weather band‹
Switching on the Weather Band	›Weather band on‹
Selecting a Weather Band station	›Select a weather channel‹

Satellite radio

Function	Command
Calling up the satellite radio	›Satellite radio‹
Switching on the satellite radio	›Satellite radio on‹
Selecting a satellite radio channel	›Satellite radio channel‹ e.g. channel 2

Presets

Function	Command
Calling up the stored stations	›Presets‹
Choosing a stored station	›Select preset‹
Selecting a stored station	›Preset ...‹ e.g. stored station 2

Telephone

CarManuals2.com

Function	Command
Opening the Telephone menu	›Telephone‹
To display phone book	›Phonebook‹
Redialing	›Redial‹
Displaying accepted calls	›Received calls‹
Dialing a phone number	›Dial number‹
Displaying the list of messages	›Messages‹
Displaying Bluetooth	›Bluetooth‹

Navigation

General information

Function	Command
Navigation menu	›Navigation‹
Opening destination entry	›Enter address‹
Opening destination guidance	›Guidance‹
To start destination guidance	›Start guidance‹

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 602 735 - © 08/09 BMW AG

Function	Command
To end destination guidance	›Stop guidance‹
Opening the home address	›Home address‹
Opening the route criteria	›Route preference‹
Opening the route	›Route information‹
To switch on voice instructions	›Switch on voice instructions‹
Repeating a voice instruction	›Repeat voice instructions‹
To switch off voice instructions	›Switch off voice instructions‹
To display address book	›Address book‹
Displaying the last destinations	›Last destinations‹
Opening the traffic bulletins	›Traffic Info‹
Special destinations	›Points of interest‹

Map

Function	Command
Displaying the map	›Map‹
Map facing north	›Map facing north‹
Map in the direction of travel	›Map in direction of travel‹
Perspective map	›Perspective map‹
Automatic scaling of the map*	›Map with automatic scaling‹
To change scale	›Map scale‹
Scale ... feet*	›Map scale ... feet‹ e.g. map scale 100 feet
Scale ... meters*	›Map scale ... meters‹ e.g. map scale 100 meters
Scale ... kilometers*	›Map scale ... kilometers‹ e.g. map scale 5 kilometers
Scale ... miles*	›Map scale ... miles‹ e.g. map scale 5 miles
Scale ... yards*	›Map scale ... yards‹ e.g. map scale 100 yards

Split screen settings

Function	Command
Split screen	›Switch on splitscreen‹
Switching off the split screen	›Turn off split screen‹
Adapting the split screen	›Split screen content‹
Split screen current position	›Split screen current position‹
Split screen map facing north	›Split screen map facing north‹
Split screen direction of travel	›Split screen map in direction of travel‹
Split screen perspective	›Split screen perspective‹

CarManuals2.com

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 602 735 - © 08/09 BMW AG

Function	Command
Automatically scaling the split screen	›Split screen automatic scaling‹
Split screen scale ... feet*	›Split screen scale ... feet‹ e.g. split screen scale 100 feet
Split screen scale ... meters*	›Split screen scale ... meters‹ e.g. split screen scale 100 meters
Split screen scale ... kilometers*	›Split screen scale ... kilometers‹ e.g. split screen scale 5 kilometers
Split screen scale ... miles*	›Split screen scale ... miles‹ e.g. split screen scale 5 miles
Split screen scale ... yards*	›Split screen scale ... yards‹ e.g. split screen scale 100 yards
Split screen, computer	›Split screen on board info‹
Split screen, trip computer	›Splitscreen trip computer‹

CarManuals2.com

Contacts

Function	Command
Opening the contacts	›Contacts‹
My contacts	›My contacts‹
New contact	›New contact‹

BMW Assist

Function	Command
Opening BMW Assist	›B M W Assist‹
Opening BMW Search*	›B M W Search‹
Opening the Internet*	›Internet‹

Vehicle information

Function	Command
Opening the computer	›Onboard info‹
Opening the trip computer	›Trip computer‹
Opening the vehicle information	›Vehicle info‹
Opening the vehicle status	›Vehicle status‹

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 602 735 - © 08/09 BMW AG

Settings

Vehicle

Function	Command
Opening the main menu	›Main menu‹
Selecting the settings	›Settings‹
Opening the options	›Options‹
Central screen settings	›Control display‹
Opening the time and date settings	›Time and date‹
Opening the language and unit settings	›Language and units‹
Opening the speed limit	›Limit‹
Opening the light menu	›Lighting‹
Selecting the door lock	›Door locks‹

Equipment

Function	Command
Selecting the air conditioning	›Climate‹

CarManuals2.com

Everything from A to Z

Index

A

ABS Antilock Brake System 76
– indicator lamp 78
Accessories 6
Accident, refer to Emergency request 212
Activated-charcoal filter for automatic climate control 98
Activation times of parked car ventilation, preselecting 98
Active front head restraints 46
Adapter for spare key 26
Adaptive brake lamps, refer to Brake force display 83
Adaptive Light Control 90
Additional connection of music player in mobile phone 156
Additives
– coolant 196
– engine oil, refer to Approved engine oils 195
Address, entering 117, 123
Address for navigation
– entering 117
Adjusting interior temperature 95
Adjusting the tone during audio operation, refer to Tone control 136
Adjusting thigh support 44
Airbags 83
– deactivating, refer to Exception for front passenger seat 52
– indicator/warning lamp 85
– indicator lamp for front passenger airbags 84
– sitting safely 43
Air distribution
– automatic 95
– manual 96
Airing, refer to Ventilation 97
Air outlets, refer to Ventilation 97
Air recirculation, refer to AUC Automatic recirculated-air control 96
Air supply, automatic climate control 94
Air volume 96
AKI, refer to Fuel specifications 185
Alarm system 33
– avoiding unintentional alarms 34
– interior motion sensor 34
– switching off alarm 33
– switching off tilt alarm sensor and interior motion sensor 34
– tilt alarm sensor 34
Albums of music collection 153
Alloy wheels 201
All-season tires, refer to Winter tires 190
Alterations, technical, refer to For your own safety 5
Antenna for mobile phone 162
Antifreeze
– coolant 196
– washer fluid 63
Antilock Brake System ABS 76
Anti-theft alarm system, refer to Alarm system 33
Anti-theft system, refer to Central locking system 27
Approved axle loads, refer to Weights 223
Approved engine oils 195
Approved gross vehicle weight, refer to Weights 223
Armrest, refer to Center armrest 102
Around the center console 14
Around the steering wheel 10
Arrival time
– refer to Computer 67
Ashtray 104
Assistance systems, refer to Driving stability control systems 76
AUC Automatic recirculated-air control 96
Audio 136
– controls 136
– switching on/off 136
– tone control 136
– volume 136
Audio device, external 102
Automatic
– air distribution 95
– air volume 95
– cruise control 63
– headlamp control 89
– steering wheel adjustment 45
Automatic climate control 94
– automatic air distribution 95
– convertible program 95
– parked car ventilation/heating 98
– switching on and off 97
Automatic closing of doors, refer to Automatic soft closing 31
Automatic curb monitor 49

CarManuals2.com

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 602 735 - © 08/09 BMW AG

Automatic lighting
– refer to Automatic headlamp control 89
– refer to Daytime running lamps 90
– refer to Interior lamps 93
– refer to Pathway lighting 90
– refer to Welcome lamps 89
Automatic lights
– refer to High-beam Assistant 91
Automatic Service Request 180
Automatic soft closing 31
AUTO program for automatic climate control 95
AUX-IN connection 102
AUX-IN port 156
Available services 180
Average fuel consumption 67
– setting units 68
Avoiding highways for navigation 126
Avoiding unintentional alarms 34
Axle loads, refer to Weights 223

B

Backrest contour, refer to Lumbar support 44
Backrests, refer to Seats 43
Backrest width adjustment 44
Backup lamps, replacing bulbs, refer to Tail lamps 204
Band-aids, refer to First aid kit 213
Bass, refer to Tone control 136
Battery
– jump starting 213
– refer to Vehicle battery 210
Battery replacement, remote control for Comfort Access 36
BC button, refer to Computer 66
Being towed 215
Belts, refer to Safety belts 48
Beverage holder, refer to Cupholders 103
Blower, refer to Air volume 96
Bluetooth, activating/deactivating 164
BMW
– Car Shampoo 202
BMW Assist, activating 178, 180
BMW Assist 176
BMW homepage 4
BMW maintenance system 197
BMW Search 178
BMW website 4
Bottle holder, refer to Cupholders 103
Bracket for telephone or mobile phone
– refer to Snap-in adapter 172
Brake assistant 76
Brake force display 83
Brake lamps
– replacing bulbs, refer to Tail lamps 204
– two-stage 83
Brake pedal, refer to Braking safely 109
Brake rotors
– breaking-in 108
– refer to Braking safely 109
Brakes
– ABS Antilock Brake System 76
– brake force display 83
– breaking-in 108
– CBC Cornering Brake Control 76
– electronic brake-force distribution 76
– parking brake 57
– refer to Braking safely 109
Brake system 108
– brake pads 108
– brake rotors 109
– breaking-in 108
– warning lamp 13, 78
Braking safely 109
Breakdown
– M Mobility System 205
Breakdown services, refer to Roadside Assistance 213
Breaking-in brake pads 108
Breaking-in the clutch 108
Breaking-in the differential, refer to Engine and differential 108
Break-in period 108
Brightness of Control Display 74
Button for starting engine, refer to Start/Stop button 55
Buttons on steering wheel 11

C

California Proposition 65 Warning 6
Call
– accepting 165
– ending 166
– rejecting 166
Calling, refer to Phone numbers, dialing 166
Can holder, refer to Cupholders 103
Capacities 223
Car battery, refer to Vehicle battery 210

CarManuals2.com

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 602 735 - © 08/09 BMW AG

Care 199
– car-care products 199
– carpets 201
– car washes 199
– CD/DVD player 202
– chrome components 201
– convertible top 200
– displays 202
– exterior 199
– fine wooden components 202
– hand washing 200
– headlamps 200
– high-pressure cleaning jets 199
– interior 201
– leather 201
– light-alloy wheels 201
– paint 200
– plastic components 201
– rubber gaskets 201
– safety belts 202
– sensors and cameras 202
– upholstery and cloth-covered paneling 201
– windows 200
Cargo area
– capacity 223
– emergency release 32
– opening/closing, refer to Luggage compartment lid 32
– opening from inside 31
– opening from outside 32
– opening with remote control 29
Caring for the vehicle finish 200
Car key, refer to Keys/remote control 26
Car phone
– installation location, refer to Center armrest 102
– refer to separate operating instructions
Car phone, refer to Telephone 162
Car radio, refer to Radio 139
Car Shampoo 202
Car washes 199
Catalytic converter, refer to Hot exhaust system 109
CBC Cornering Brake Control 76
CBS Condition Based Service 197
CD, audio playback 144
CD changer 144, 148
– controls 136
– fast forward/reverse 146
– filling or emptying the magazine 148
– random sequence 145
– selecting a track 144
– switching on/off 136
– tone control 136
– volume 136
CD player 144
– controls 136
– fast forward/reverse 146
– random sequence 145
– selecting a track 144
– switching on/off 136
– tone control 136
– volume 136
Center armrest, adjusting height 102
Center console 14
Central locking
– from inside 30
– from outside 28
Central locking system 27
– Comfort Access 34
– hotel function 31
Changes, technical, refer to For your own safety 5
Changing language on Control Display 73
Changing units of measure on Control Display 68
Changing wheels 189, 207
Chassis number, refer to Engine compartment 193
CHECK button 71
Check Control 70
Check Gas Cap 184
Checking air pressure, refer to Tire inflation pressure 186
Child restraint fixing system LATCH 53
Child restraint systems 52
Child seats, refer to Transporting children safely 52
Chock 208
Chrome-plated parts 202
Chrome polish 202
Cigarette lighter 104
Cigarette lighter socket, refer to Connecting electrical devices 104
Cleaning your BMW, refer to Care 199
Clock 66
– 12h/24h format 70
– setting time 69
– setting time and date 70
Closing
– from inside 30
– from outside 28
Closing fuel filler cap 184
Clothes hooks, Coupe 103
Cockpit 10
Cold start, refer to Starting engine 56
Comfort Access 34
– replacing battery, remote control 35
Comfort access 34
Comfort program of EDC 79
Compartment for remote control, refer to Ignition lock 55
Compartments, refer to Storage compartments 103
Computer 66
– clock 66
– displays on Control Display 67
Concierge service 177
Condensation, refer to When vehicle is parked 110
Condition Based Service CBS 197
Confirmation signals for locking and unlocking 29

CarManuals2.com

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 602 735 - © 08/09 BMW AG

Connecting car vacuum cleaner, refer to Connecting electrical devices 104
Consumption display, refer to Average fuel consumption 67
Consumption statistics, refer to Average fuel consumption 67
Contacts
– creating 174
Control Center, refer to iDrive 16
Control Display, refer to iDrive 16
– setting brightness 74
– switching off/on 19
Controller, refer to iDrive 16
Controls, refer to Cockpit 10
Convenient closing
– windows, with Comfort Access with Coupe 35
– with Comfort Access 35
Convenient opening and closing
– convertible top 28, 30
– windows 28, 30
Convertible
– convertible program for automatic climate control 95
– opening and closing windows 36
– rollover protection system 85
– top 38
– wind deflector 41
Convertible top
– closing manually 39
– convenient opening and closing 30
– emergency closing 39
– opening and closing 38
Convertible top care 200
Coolant 196
– checking level 196
– temperature 65
Cooling, maximum 96
Cooling fluid, refer to Coolant 196
Cooling function, automatic climate control 96
Cooling system, refer to Coolant 196
Copyright 2
Cornering Brake Control CBC 76
Country codes DVD 146
Country of destination for navigation 117
Courtesy lamps, refer to Interior lamps 93
Cradle for telephone or mobile phone 102
Cruise control 63
Cruising range 67
Cupholders 15, 103
Curb weight, refer to Weights 223
Current playback
– external devices 158
– of music collection 153
Customer Relations 179
Cylinders, refer to Engine data 220

D

Dashboard, refer to Cockpit 10
Data, technical 220
– dimensions 221
– engine 220
– weights 223
Data transfer 180
Date
– date format 70
– setting 70
Daytime running lamps 90
– replacing bulbs 204
Defect
– door lock 30
– luggage compartment lid 32
– tires, refer to Flat Tire Monitor 79
– tires, refer to Tire Pressure Monitor 81
Defrosting windows 96
Defrosting windows and removing condensation 96
Defrosting windshield, refer to Defrosting windows 96
Defrost position, refer to Defrosting windows 96
Destination address
– entering 117, 123
Destination entry via BMW Assist 121
Destination for navigation
– entering via map 122
– entering via voice 123
– entry 117
Destination guidance 126
– bypassing route sections 127
– changing specified route 126
– continuing 126
– starting 126
– voice instructions 127
– volume of voice instructions 128
Detour, selecting 131
Digital clock 66
Digital radio, refer to HD Radio 140
Dimensions
– Convertible 222
– Coupe 221
Directional indicators, refer to Turn signals 61
Direction announcements, refer to Voice instructions 127
Direction instructions, refer to Voice instructions 127
Directory for navigation, refer to Address book 119
Displacement, refer to Engine data 220
Display, refer to iDrive controls 16
Display elements, refer to Instrument cluster 12
Display lighting, refer to Instrument lighting 93

CarManuals2.com

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 602 735 - © 08/09 BMW AG

Displays
– on Control Display, refer to iDrive 16
– refer to Instrument cluster 12
Displays on the windshield, refer to Head-up Display 86
Disposal
– battery of remote control with Comfort Access 36
– coolant 196
– vehicle battery 210
Distance, refer to Computer 67
Distance to destination, refer to Computer 67
Distance warning, refer to PDC Park Distance Control 75
Door entry lighting, refer to Interior lamps 93
Door key, refer to Keys/ remote control 26
Door lock 29
Doors
– manual operation 30
– remote control 28
DOT Quality Grades 188
Draft-free ventilation 97
Drinks holder, refer to Cupholders 103
Drivelogic 50, 59
Drive-off assistant, refer to Starting off on uphill slopes 78
Driving lamps, refer to Parking lamps/low beams 89
Driving programs, refer to Drivelogic 59
Driving stability control systems 76
Driving through water 109
Driving tips, refer to General driving notes 108
Dry air, refer to Cooling function 96
Drying the air, refer to Cooling function 96
DSC 51
DSC Dynamic Stability Control 76
– indicator lamp 13, 76
– malfunction 78
DTC Dynamic Traction Control
– indicator lamp 13
DVD
– country codes 146
– settings 147
– video playback 146
DVD menu 147
DVD player, refer to CD player 144
DVD video 146
Dynamic destination guidance 127
Dynamic Stability Control DSC 76
– M Dynamic Mode MDM 76

E

Easy entry, refer to Entering rear 47
Easy entry/exit 50
EDC 51
EDC Electronic Damping Control 79
Eject button, refer to Buttons in area of the CD/DVD player 136
Electrical malfunction
– convertible top 39
– door lock 30
– driver's door 30
– fuel filler flap 184
– luggage compartment lid 32
– storage compartment, hotel function 31
Electric convertible top 38
Electric steering wheel adjustment 50
Electronic brake-force distribution 76
Electronic Damping Control EDC 79
– Comfort program 79
– Normal program 79
– Sport program 79
Emergency operation, refer to Manual operation
– convertible top 39
– door lock 30
– driver's door 30
– fuel filler flap 184
– hotel function 31
– luggage compartment lid 32
Emergency release for luggage compartment lid in cargo area 32
Emergency request 212
Emergency services, refer to Roadside Assistance 213
Engine
– breaking-in 108
– data 220
– M Engine Dynamic Control 60
– overheated, refer to Coolant temperature 65
– speed 220
– starting 56
– starting, Comfort Access 34
– switching off 56
Engine compartment 193
Engine coolant 196
Engine oil
– adding 195
– additives, refer to Approved engine oils 195
– approved oils 195
– checking oil level 193
– fast measurement 194
– interval between changes, refer to Service requirements 68
– oil change 195
– oil grades, refer to Approved engine oils 195
– possible displays 194
– recommended oils 195
– temperature 66
– temperature gauge 66

CarManuals2.com

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 602 735 - © 08/09 BMW AG

Engine output, refer to Engine data 220
Engine overheating, refer to Coolant temperature 65
Engine speed, refer to Engine data 220
Engine starting, refer to Starting engine 56
Entering destination via town/city name 117
Entering rear 47
Entering zip code for navigation 118
Entertainment sound output on/off 136
Entry map for destination 122
Equalizer, refer to Tone control 137
ESP Electronic Stability Program, refer to DSC Dynamic Stability Control 76
Event Data Recorders 198
Exhaust system, refer to Hot exhaust system 109
Exterior mirrors 49
– adjusting 49
– automatic dimming feature 50
– automatic heating 49
– folding in and out 49
– tilting down passenger-side exterior mirror 49
External audio device 102
External devices
– random sequence 158
Eye for tow-starting and towing, refer to Tow fitting 214

F

Failure messages, refer to Check Control 70
False alarm
– refer to Avoiding unintentional alarms 34
– refer to Switching off alarm 33
Fastening safety belts, refer to Safety belts 48
Fastest route for navigation 126
Fast forward
– CD changer 146
– CD player 146
Filler neck for washer fluid 63
Filling bottle, refer to M Mobility System 205
Filter, refer to Microfilter/activated-charcoal filter 98
First aid, refer to First aid kit 213
First aid kit 213
Flashing
– during locking/unlocking, refer to Setting confirmation signals 29
– triple turn signal activation 61
Flat tire
– Flat Tire Monitor 79
– M Mobility System 205
– run-flat tires 82
– spare wheel 208
– Tire Pressure Monitor 81
– TPM Tire Pressure Monitor 81
– warning lamp 81, 82
Flat Tire Monitor 79
– false alarms 80
– initializing system 80
– snow chains 191
– system limits 80
– warning lamp 81
Fluid reservoir, refer to Filler neck for washer fluid 63
FM, waveband 139
Folding into raised position convertible top compartment floor, Convertible 33
Footwell lamps, refer to Interior lamps 93
For your own safety 5
Free memory capacity, music collection 154
Front airbags 83
Front passenger airbags
– deactivating 84
FTM, refer to Flat Tire Monitor 79
Fuel
– average consumption 67
– display 66
– fuel specifications 185
– high-quality brands 185
– quality 185
– specifications 185
– tank contents, refer to Capacities 223
Fuel clock, refer to Fuel gauge 66
Fuel display, refer to Fuel gauge 66
Fuel filler flap 184
– releasing in the event of electrical malfunction 184
Fuses 210

G

Garage door opener, refer to Integrated universal remote control 100
Gasoline
– refer to Average fuel consumption 67
– refer to Fuel specifications 185
– refer to Required fuel 185
Gasoline display, refer to Fuel gauge 66
Gas station recommendations 127
Gear changes 59
Gear display, refer to Displays in instrument cluster 59
Gearshift lever
– manual transmission 57
General driving notes 108
Glass sunroof, electric with tilt function
– convenient opening and closing with Comfort Access 35
Glove compartment 101

Carmanuals2.com

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 602 735 - © 08/09 BMW AG

GPS navigation, refer to Navigation system 116
Grills, refer to Ventilation 97
Gross vehicle weight, refer to Weights 223
Ground clearance 108

H

Handbrake
– indicator lamp 13, 57
Handbrake, refer to Parking brake 57
Hands-free system, refer to Microphone 14
Hand washing 200
Hazard warning flashers 15
HD Radio 140
Head airbags 83
Headlamp
– cleaning tank, refer to Capacities 223
Headlamp control, automatic 89
Headlamp flasher 61
Headlamps
– cleaning, refer to Wiper system 62
– filler neck for washer fluid 193
– replacing bulbs 203
Head Light, refer to Adaptive Light Control 90
Head restraints
– active front head restraints 46
– front 46
– sitting safely 43
Head-up Display 51, 86
– default view 87
– M view 87
– shift lights 60
Heated
– mirrors 49
– rear window 96
– seats 48
– steering wheel 50
Heating 95
– exterior mirrors 49
– interior 94
– rear window 96
– residual heat 97
– seats 48
– steering wheel 50
Heating with engine switched off, refer to Residual heat 97
Heavy cargo, refer to Securing cargo 111
Height, refer to Dimensions 221
Height adjustment
– seats 44
– steering wheel 50
High-beam Assistant 91
High beams 91
– headlamp flasher 91
– indicator lamp 13
High-pressure cleaning jets 199, 200
High water, refer to Driving through water 109
Highway, refer to Route criteria 126
Hills 109
Holder for cups 103
Homepage of BMW 4
Hood 192
Horn 10
Hotel function 31
– unlocking manually 31
Hot exhaust system 109
Hydraulic brake assistant, refer to Brake assistant 76
Hydroplaning 109

I

IBOC, refer to HD Radio 140
Ice, refer to Outside temperature warning 66
Identification mark
– recommended tire brands 190
– tire coding 188
Idle 58
iDrive 16
– changing date and time 70
– changing language 73
– changing settings 73
– changing units of measure and display type 68
– controller 16
– controls 16
– operating principle 17
– setting brightness 74
– start menu 17
– status information 19
Ignition 55
– switched off 56
– switched on 55
Ignition key, refer to Keys/remote control 26
Ignition key position 1, refer to Radio readiness 55
Ignition key position 2, refer to Ignition on 55
Ignition lock 55
– starting engine with Comfort Access 35
Impressum 2
Imprint 2
Indicator/warning lamps
– ABS Antilock Brake System 78
– airbags 85
– brake system 78
– DSC 13, 76
– DTC 13
– Flat Tire Monitor 81
– MDrive 13, 50
– M Dynamic Mode 13, 77
– parking brake 13, 57
– parking lamps/low beams 13
– safety belt warning 48
– TPM Tire Pressure Monitor 82
Indicator and warning lamps
– overview 13
Inflation pressure, refer to Tire inflation pressure 186
Inflation pressure monitoring, refer to Flat Tire Monitor 79

CarManuals2.com

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 602 735 - © 08/09 BMW AG

Inflation pressure monitoring, refer to Tire Pressure Monitor 81
Initializing
– Flat Tire Monitor 80
– radio, refer to Storing stations 140
– refer to Power failure 210
– refer to Setting time and date 70
– seat, mirror and steering wheel memory 45
Instructions for navigation system, refer to Voice instructions 127
Instrument cluster 12
Instrument illumination, refer to Instrument lighting 93
Instrument lighting 93
Instrument panel, refer to Cockpit 10
Instrument panel, refer to Instrument cluster 12
Integrated key 26
Integrated universal remote control 100
Interactive map 122
Interior lamps 93
– switching on with remote control 28
Interior motion sensor 34
– switching off 34
Interior rearview mirror, automatic dimming feature 50
Intermittent mode of the wipers 62
Intersection, entering for navigation 118
iPod, connecting, refer to AUX-IN port 156
iPod, connecting, refer to USB audio interface 156

J

Jacking points 208
Joystick, refer to iDrive 16
Jumpering, refer to Jump starting 213
Jump starting 213

K

Keyless-Go, refer to Comfort Access 34
Keyless opening and closing, refer to Comfort Access 34
Key Memory, refer to Personal Profile 26
Keys 26
– key-related settings, refer to Personal Profile 26
– spare key 26
Kickdown, refer to Drive mode 59
Knee airbags 83
Knock control 185

L

Lamps
– refer to High-beam Assistant 91
– refer to Parking lamps/low beams 89
Lamps and bulbs 203
Lashing eyes, refer to Securing cargo 111
Last destinations 120
LATCH child restraint fixing system 53
Leather care 201
LEDs light-emitting diodes 203
Length, refer to Dimensions 221
License plate lamp, replacing bulbs 205
Light-emitting diodes LEDs 203
Lighter 104
Lighting
– instruments 93
– lamps and bulbs 203
– of the vehicle, refer to Lamps 89
Light switch 89
Loading
– securing cargo 111
– stowing cargo 111
– vehicle 110
Loading, refer to Cargo loading 110
Load securing equipment, refer to Securing cargo 111
Lock buttons in the doors, refer to Locking 31
Locking 28
– confirmation signals 29
– from inside 31
– from outside 28
– without key, refer to Comfort Access 34
Locking and unlocking doors
– confirmation signals 29
– from inside 30
– from outside 28
Low beams 89
– automatic 89
– indicator lamp 13
– replacing bulbs 204
Lower back support, refer to Lumbar support 44
Lug bolts 208
– tightening torque, refer to After mounting 209
– wrench 208
Luggage compartment
– hotel function 31
– increasing capacity, Convertible 33
Luggage compartment lid 31
– emergency operation 32
– emergency release 32
– opening from inside 31
– opening from outside 32
– opening with remote control 29, 32
– unlocking manually 32
Luggage compartment lid/ tailgate
– Comfort Access 35
Lumbar support 44

CarManuals2.com

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 602 735 - © 08/09 BMW AG

M

M Dynamic Mode MDM 76
– indicator lamp 13, 77
M Engine Dynamic Control 60
M Mobility System 205
M+S tires, refer to Winter tires 190
Maintenance 197
– refer to Service requirements 68
Maintenance system 197
Malfunction
– convertible top 39
– driver's door 30
– fuel filler flap 184
– hotel function 31
Malfunction warnings, refer to Check Control 70
Managing music 154
Manual air distribution 96
Manual operation
– convertible top 39
– door lock 30
– driver's door 30
– fuel filler flap 184
– hotel function 31
– luggage compartment lid 32
Manual transmission 57
– tow-starting 216
Map display 128
Map for navigation
– changing scale 129
– destination entry 122
Map view facing north 128
Master key, refer to Keys/ remote control 26
Maximum cooling 96
Maximum speed with winter tires 190
MDM, refer to M Dynamic Mode 76
MDrive 50, 77
Measurements, refer to Dimensions
– Convertible 222
– Coupe 221
Memory, refer to Seat, mirror and steering wheel memory 45
Menus, refer to iDrive 16
Messages 168
Messages from the concierge service 169
Microfilter 98
Microphone
– for telephone 14
– for voice activation system 14
Mirror dimming feature 50
Mirrors 49
– automatic curb monitor 49
– folding in and out 49
– heating 49
– memory, refer to Seat, mirror and steering wheel memory 45
Mobile phone
– adjusting volume 165
– connecting, refer to Mobile phone, pairing 162
– installation location, refer to Center armrest 102
– operation via iDrive 165
– pairing 162
– refer to separate operating instructions
Mobile phone, refer to Telephone 162
Mobile phone battery 173
Mobility System 205
Monitor, refer to iDrive 16
Monitoring pressure of tires, refer to Flat Tire Monitor 79
MP3 player, connecting, refer to AUX-IN port 156
MP3 player, connecting, refer to USB audio interface 156
Multi-channel playback 137
Multi-function steering wheel, refer to Buttons on steering wheel 11
Multifunction switch
– refer to Turn signals/ headlamp flasher 61
– refer to Wiper system 62
Music, playing 152
Music collection 151
– backup 155
– deleting 155
– random sequence 154
– restoring 155
Music player, connecting, refer to AUX-IN port 156
Music player, connecting, refer to USB audio interface 156
Music search 152
M View 86
M view 87
MW, waveband 139
My Info 169

N

Navigation
– starting destination guidance after entering a destination 119
– storing current position 119
– voice activation 123
Navigation data 116
Navigation destination
– entering manually 117
– home address 120
Navigation instructions, refer to Switching voice instructions on/off 127

CarManuals2.com

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 602 735 - © 08/09 BMW AG

Navigation system 116
– address book 119
– bypassing route sections 127
– continuing destination guidance 126
– destination entry 117
– dynamic destination guidance 127
– entering a destination manually 117
– entering destination via voice 123
– frequently asked questions 132
– gas station recommendations 127
– planning a trip 124
– route list 127
– selecting destination via map 122
– selecting route criteria 126
– special destinations 120
– starting destination guidance 126
– terminating destination guidance 126
– traffic bulletins 129
– voice instructions 127
– volume adjustment 128
Neck support, refer to Front head restraints 46
New remote control 26
New wheels and tires 189
Normal program of EDC 79
Nozzles, refer to Windshield washer nozzles 63
Nylon rope, refer to Tow-starting and towing 214

O

OBD socket, refer to Socket for Onboard Diagnostics interface 198
Octane ratings, refer to Fuel specifications 185
Odometer 65
Oil, refer to Engine oil 193
Oil change intervals
– refer to Service requirements 68
Onboard computer, refer to iDrive 16
Onboard vehicle tool kit 203
Opening and closing
– Comfort Access 34
– from inside 30
– from outside 28
– using remote control 28
– using the door lock 29
Operating principle, iDrive 17
Orientation menu, refer to Start menu 17
Output, refer to Engine data 220
Outside air, refer to AUC Automatic recirculated-air control 96
Outside temperature display
– changing unit of measure 68
– in computer 68
Overview
– operating principle 17
– radio control 136

CarManuals2.com

P

P 400 program 60
P 500 program 61
P 500 Sport program 61
Panic mode 29
Park Distance Control PDC 75
Parked car heating, refer to Parked car ventilation/ heating 98
Parked car ventilation 98
– switching on and off directly 98
Parked car ventilation system
– LED 94
Parking
– vehicle 56
Parking aid, refer to PDC Park Distance Control 75
Parking assistant, refer to PDC Park Distance Control 75
Parking brake 57
Parking brake, refer to Handbrake 57
Parking lamps 89
– indicator lamp 13
– replacing bulbs 204
Parts and accessories 6
Passenger-side exterior mirror, tilting down 49
Pathway lighting 90
PDC Park Distance Control 75
Personal Profile 26
Phone book 165
Phone numbers
– dialing 166
Pinch protection system of power windows 37
Plasters, refer to First aid kit 213
Plug-in unit for remote control, refer to Ignition lock 55
Polish 202
Pollen, refer to Microfilter/ activated charcoal filter 98
POWER 51
POWER, refer to M Engine Dynamic Control 60
Power failure 210
Power windows, refer to Windows 36
Pressure, tires 186
– producing with M Mobility System 205
Pressure monitoring of tires, refer to TPM Tire Pressure Monitor 81
Protective function, refer to Pinch protection system of windows 37

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 602 735 - © 08/09 BMW AG

R

Radio
– controls 136
– HD Radio 140
– satellite radio 142
– selecting waveband 139
– storing stations 140
– switching on/off 136
– tone control 136
– volume 136
– weatherband, refer to Weather news flashes 141
Radio key, refer to Keys/ remote control 26
Radio position, refer to Radio readiness 55
Radio readiness 55
– switched off 56
– switched on 55
– with Comfort Access 35
Rain sensor, windshield wiper system 62
Random sequence
– external devices 158
– music collection 154
Reading lamps 93
Rear lamps, refer to Tail lamps 204
Rearview mirrors, refer to Mirrors 49
Rear window
– heating 96
– opening and closing 37
Reception
– quality 140
– radio stations 140
Recirculated-air mode, refer to AUC Automatic recirculated-air control 96
Recirculation of air, refer to AUC Automatic recirculated-air control 96
Reclining seat, refer to Seats 43
Reflectors, refer to Tail lamps 204
Refueling 184
Releasing
– hood 192
Releasing the locks, refer to Unlocking 35
Remaining distance, refer to Cruising range 67
Remaining distance to destination, refer to Computer 67
Remote control 26
– Comfort Access 34
– garage door opener 100
– luggage compartment lid 29
– malfunction 29, 35
– replacing battery 35
Removing condensation on the windows 96
Replacement fuses 210
Replacement of tires
– refer to Changing wheels 207
Replacement remote control, refer to New remote controls 26
Replacing bulbs, refer to Lamps and bulbs 203
Replacing wheels/tires, refer to New wheels and tires 189
Reporting safety defects 7
Required fuel 185
Reserve
– warning, refer to Fuel gauge 66
Reset, refer to Resetting tone settings 138
Residual heat 97
Restraint systems
– for children 52
– refer to Safety belts 48
Retreaded tires 190
Reverse
– CD changer 146
– CD player 146
Reverse gear 58
– manual transmission 57
Road map 128
Roadside Assistance 177, 213
Roadside parking lamps 91
– replacing bulbs, refer to Parking lamps 204
Rollover protection system on Convertible 85
– lowering 85
Rope, refer to Tow-starting and towing 214
Rotary/pushbutton, refer to iDrive 16
Route 126, 127
– bypassing sections 127
– changing 126, 127
– changing criteria 126
– displaying map view 128
– displaying streets or towns/ cities 127
– selecting 126
Route information, refer to Destination guidance with voice instructions 127
Route map, refer to Displaying map view 128
Route selection 126
Run-flat tires
– continuing driving with a damaged tire 82
– flat tire 82
– tire replacement 189

S

Safety belts 48
– damage 48
– indicator lamp 48
– reminder 48
– sitting safely 43
Safety belt tensioners, refer to Safety belts 48
Safety systems
– ABS Antilock Brake System 76
– airbags 83
– driving stability control systems 76
– rollover protection system, Convertible 85
– safety belts 48

CarManuals2.com

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 602 735 - © 08/09 BMW AG

Satellite radio 142
– enabling or disabling channel 142
– selecting channel 143
– storing channel 143
Scale for navigation, changing 129
Screen, refer to iDrive 16
Screw thread for tow fitting 215
SDARS, refer to Satellite radio 142
Seats 43
– adjusting backrest width 44
– adjusting the seats 44
– heating 48
– lumbar support 44
– memory, refer to Seat, mirror and steering wheel memory 45
– sitting safely 43
– storing the setting 45
– thigh support 44
Section of route, altering 127
Securing cargo 111
– ski bag 105
Selecting route 126
Selection options with navigation system 126
Selector lever 58
– Sequential Manual Transmission 58
Selector lever lock, refer to Shiftlock 58
Sequential Manual Transmission with Drivelogic 58
– Drivelogic driving programs 59
– Drive mode 59
– idle 58
– initializing system, refer to After changing wheels/ tires 190
– kickdown 59
– reverse gear 58
– Sequential mode 58
– shift lights 60
– shiftlock 58
– towing 215
– tow-starting 216
Sequential mode 58
Service, refer to Roadside Assistance 213
Service Interval Display
– refer to CBS Condition Based Service 197
– refer to Service requirements 68
Service Request 179
Service requirements 68
– refer to CBS Condition Based Service 197
Services status 180
Setting button, refer to Controls, controller 16
Settings
– changing on Control Display 73
– clock, 12h/24h mode 70
– configuring, refer to MDrive 50
– configuring, refer to Personal Profile 26
– DVD 147
– language 73
Settings for the map view 129
Setting time, refer to Preselecting activation times 98
Shifting 59
Shifting into drive position, refer to Selector lever positions 58
Shift lights 60
Shiftlock 58
Shift paddles on steering wheel 59
Shock absorber control, refer to EDC Electronic Damping Control 79
Short commands of voice activation system 224
Short route in navigation, refer to Selecting route 126
Shuffled, refer to Random
– CD changer 145
– CD player 145
Side airbags 83
Side-mounted turn signals, replacing bulbs 204
Signal horn, refer to Horn 10
Sill panel lighting, refer to Interior lamps 93
Sitting safely 43
– with airbags 43
– with head restraint 43
– with safety belts 43
Ski bag 104
Slope assistant, refer to Starting off on uphill slopes 78
SMG, refer to Sequential Manual Transmission with Drivelogic 58
Smokers' package, refer to Ashtray 104
Snap-in adapter
– mounting/removing 172
– using 162
Snow chains 191
Socket, refer to Connecting electrical devices 104
Socket for Onboard Diagnostics interface 198
Socket for remote control, refer to Ignition lock 55
Soft closure aid, refer to Automatic soft closing 31

CarManuals2.com

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 602 735 - © 08/09 BMW AG

SOS, refer to Initiating an emergency request 212
Spare
– adapter for spare key 26
– fuses 210
– key 26
– wheel, driving with spare wheel 209
– wheel, refer to Changing wheels 207
Special destinations 120
Special destinations, displaying 122
Special destinations, entering by name 121
Special oils, refer to Approved engine oils 195
Specified oil grades, refer to Approved engine oils 195
Speed limit warning, refer to Speed limit 72
Speedometer 12
Speed Volume 137
Speed with winter tires 190
Split screen, refer to Control Display, switching on/off 19
Split screen content, refer to Display for split screen content, selecting 20
Sport program of EDC 79
Stability control, refer to Driving stability control systems 76
Start/Stop button 55
– starting the engine 56
– switching off the engine 56
Starting, refer to Starting engine 56
Starting assistance, refer to Jump starting 213
Starting difficulties, refer to Jump starting 213
Starting off
– clutch protection with manual transmission 79
– on a slippery surface 79
– on uphill slopes 78
Start menu 17
Station, refer to Radio 139
Station, selecting
– radio 139
Stationary ventilation
– preselecting activation times 98
Status information on Control Display 19
Status of this Owner's Manual at time of printing 5
Steam cleaners 199, 200
Steering wheel
– adjustment 50
– automatic adjustment, refer to Easy entry/exit 50
– automatic adjustment, refer to Steering wheel memory 45
– buttons on steering wheel 11
– heating 50
– lock, refer to Ignition lock 55
– MDrive button 50
– memory 45
– shift paddles 59
Storage compartments 103
Stored trip, calling up 125
Storing 202
Storing a destination in the address book 119
Storing music 151
Storing sitting position, refer to Seat, mirror and steering wheel memory 45
Storing tires 191
Storing your vehicle 202
Street, entering for navigation 118
Summer tires, refer to Wheels and tires 186
Surround 137
SVCD 146
SW, waveband 139
Switches, refer to Cockpit 10
Switching automatically between high beams and low beams, refer to High-beam Assistant 91
Switching automatically between high beams and low beams, refer to High-beam assistant 91
Switching off
– engine 56
Switching on
– audio 136
– CD changer 136
– CD player 136
– radio 136
Swiveling headlamps, refer to Adaptive Light Control 90
Symbols 4
– indicator/warning lamps 13

T

Tachometer 65
Tail lamps 204
– replacing bulbs 204
Tank capacity
– also refer to Capacities 223
– fuel tank capacity 184
Target cursor for navigation 122
Technical alterations, refer to For your own safety 5
Technical data 220
– capacities 223
– dimensions 221
Telephone 162
– installation location, refer to Center armrest 102
– refer to separate operating instructions
– voice commands 169
TeleService 176
TeleService Diagnosis 178
TeleService Help 178
Temperature
– adjusting in upper body region 97
– adjusting with automatic climate control 95
– changing unit of measure 68
– refer to Coolant temperature 65

CarManuals2.com

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 602 735 - © 08/09 BMW AG

Temperature display
– outside temperature 65
– outside temperature warning 66
– setting the units 68
Temperature gauge
– engine oil 66
Tempomat, refer to Cruise control 63
The individual vehicle 5
Tightening torque of the lug bolts, refer to After mounting 209
Tilt alarm sensor 34
– switching off 34
Tilting down passenger-side exterior mirror 49
Timer, refer to Preselecting activation times 98
Tire inflation pressure 186
Tire pressure
– loss 81
Tire Pressure Monitor TPM 81
Tire Quality Grading 188
Tire replacement
– new wheels and tires 189
Tires
– age 188
– air loss 81, 82
– breaking-in 108
– condition 189
– damage 189
– inflation pressure 186
– minimum tread depth 189
– M Mobility System 205
– new wheels and tires 189
– pressure monitoring, refer to Flat Tire Monitor 79
– pressure monitoring, refer to Tire Pressure Monitor 81
– replacing 189
– retreaded tires 190
– size 187
– size, refer to The right wheels and tires 190
– wear indicators 189
– wheel/tire combination 189
– winter tires 190
TMC station, refer to Traffic information 129
Tone
– control 136
– middle setting 138
Tone on locking/unlocking 29
Tools, refer to Onboard vehicle tool kit 203
Top 38
Top 50 of music collection 153
Torque
– lug bolts, refer to After mounting 209
– refer to Engine data 220
Tow bar 215
Tow fitting 214
Towing 214
– methods 215
– tow fittings 214
– with manual transmission 215
Town/city, for navigation 117
Tow rope 215
Tow-starting 214
TPM Tire Pressure Monitor 81
– resetting system 81
– system limits 81
– warning lamp 82
Tracks
– selecting with CD 144
Traction control, refer to DSC Dynamic Stability Control 76
Traffic bulletins
– categories 131
Traffic bulletins, filtering 131
Traffic congestion
– displaying traffic information 129
– refer to Bypassing route sections 127
Traffic information for navigation
– depiction in route map 131
– during destination guidance 131
Traffic information with navigation 129
Transmission
– breaking-in 108
– Drivelogic 59
– Drive mode 59
– drive-off assistant, refer to Starting off on uphill slopes 78
– idle 58
– kickdown, refer to Drive mode 59
– manual transmission 57
– reverse gear 58
– Sequential Manual Transmission with Drivelogic 58
– Sequential mode 58
– shift lights 60
– towing 215
– tow-starting 216
Transporting children safely 52
Transport securing device, refer to Securing cargo 111
Tread depth, refer to Minimum tire tread 189
Trip, deleting 125
Trip, storing 124
Trip-distance counter
– refer to Trip meter 65
Trip meter 65
Trip odometer, refer to Trip meter 65
Trips, changing 125
Trunk, refer to Luggage compartment 32
Trunk lid, refer to Luggage compartment lid 31
Turning circle, refer to Dimensions 221
Turn signals 61

U

Uniform Tire Quality Grading/ UTQR 188

CarManuals2.com

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 602 735 - © 08/09 BMW AG

Units
– average fuel consumption 68
– temperature 68
Universal garage-door opener, refer to Integrated universal remote control 100
Universal remote control, refer to Integrated universal remote control 100
Unlocking
– from inside 30
– from outside 28
– setting unlocking behavior 28
– without key, refer to Comfort Access 34
Unlocking without key, refer to Comfort Access 34
Updating the navigation data 116
Upshift display, refer to Shift lights 60
USB audio interface 156
Used batteries
– refer to Disposal 210
– refer to Replacing battery 36
Using turn signals 61

V

Valve screw caps, refer to After mounting 209
VCD 146
Vehicle
– battery 210
– breaking-in 108
– identification number 193
– loading 110
– measurements, refer to Dimensions 221
– parking 56
– weights 223
Vehicle care, refer to Care 199
Vehicle jack 208
– jacking points 208
Ventilation 97
– draft-free 97
– for cooling 97
– while stationary 98
Venting
– refer to Ventilation 97
Vent outlets of automatic climate control 94
Vents, refer to Ventilation 97
Video menu 147
Video playback 146
Viscosity 195
Voice, refer to Destination guidance with voice instructions 127
Voice activation system
– overview 22
– short commands 224
Voice commands
– telephone 169
Voice instructions for navigation system 127
– repeating 128
– switching on/off 127
– volume 128
Voice phone book 171
Volume 136
– audio sources 136
– cargo area 223
– fuel tank, refer to Capacities 223
– mobile phone 165
– voice instructions 128
– windshield cleaning system, refer to Capacities 223
Volume balance, tone setting 137

W

Warning lamps, refer to Indicator and warning lamps 13
Warning messages, refer to Check Control 70
Warning triangle 213
Washer fluid
– capacity of the reservoir 63
– wiper system 63
Water on roads, refer to Driving through water 109
Water penetration 199, 200
Waveband for radio 139
Wear indicators in tires, refer to Minimum tread depth 189
Weather news flashes 141
Website BMW 4
Weights 223
Welcome lamps 89
Wheel/tire combination, refer to New wheels and tires 189
Wheel/tire damage 189
Wheelbase, refer to Dimensions 221
Wheels and tires 186
Width, refer to Dimensions 221
Wind deflector 41
Windows 36
– Convenient closing with Comfort Access 35
– convenient opening and closing 28, 30
– opening and closing, Convertible 36
– opening and closing, Coupe 36
– rear window, Convertible 37
Windshield
– cleaning, refer to Wiper system 62
– defrosting, refer to Defrosting windows 96
– displays, refer to Head-up Display 86
Windshield wash
– automatic, refer to Rain sensor 62
– capacities, reservoir 223
– filler neck for washer fluid 193
– nozzles 63
– washer fluid 63
– wiper system 62
Windshield wipers, refer to Wiper system 62
– wiper blade replacement 203

CarManuals2.com

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 602 735 - © 08/09 BMW AG

Winter tires 190
– setting speed limit 72
– storage 191
Wiper blades
– replacement 203
Wiper system 62
– rain sensor 62
– washer fluid 63
– windshield washer nozzles 63
Word matching principle for navigation 125
Working in the engine compartment 192
Wrenches/screwdrivers, refer to Onboard vehicle tool kit 203

X

Xenon lamps 204
– replacing bulbs 204

Y

Your individual vehicle
– settings, refer to MDrive 50
– settings, refer to Personal Profile 26

CarManuals2.com

CarManuals2.com

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 602 735 - © 08/09 BMW AG

CarManuals2.com

More about BMW

bmwusa.com

The Ultimate
Driving Machine

CarManuals2.com

01 41 2 602 735 Ue

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 2 602 735 - © 08/09 BMW AG